



Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8

Configuring basic system settings

A guide to configuring basic system settings in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 Configuring basic system settings

A guide to configuring basic system settings in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8

Legal Notice

Copyright © 2022 Red Hat, Inc.

The text of and illustrations in this document are licensed by Red Hat under a Creative Commons Attribution–Share Alike 3.0 Unported license ("CC-BY-SA"). An explanation of CC-BY-SA is available at

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>

. In accordance with CC-BY-SA, if you distribute this document or an adaptation of it, you must provide the URL for the original version.

Red Hat, as the licensor of this document, waives the right to enforce, and agrees not to assert, Section 4d of CC-BY-SA to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo, the Red Hat logo, JBoss, OpenShift, Fedora, the Infinity logo, and RHCE are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Linux[®] is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Java[®] is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

XFS[®] is a trademark of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries.

MySQL[®] is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

Node.js[®] is an official trademark of Joyent. Red Hat is not formally related to or endorsed by the official Joyent Node.js open source or commercial project.

The OpenStack[®] Word Mark and OpenStack logo are either registered trademarks/service marks or trademarks/service marks of the OpenStack Foundation, in the United States and other countries and are used with the OpenStack Foundation's permission. We are not affiliated with, endorsed or sponsored by the OpenStack Foundation, or the OpenStack community.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Abstract

This document describes basics of system administration on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8. The title focuses on: basic tasks that a system administrator needs to do just after the operating system has been successfully installed, installing software with yum, using systemd for service management, managing users, groups and file permissions, using chrony to configure NTP, working with Python 3 and others.

Table of Contents

MAKING OPEN SOURCE MORE INCLUSIVE	9
PROVIDING FEEDBACK ON RED HAT DOCUMENTATION	10
CHAPTER 1. PREPARING A CONTROL NODE AND MANAGED NODES TO USE RHEL SYSTEM ROLES	11
1.1. INTRODUCTION TO RHEL SYSTEM ROLES	11
1.2. RHEL SYSTEM ROLES TERMINOLOGY	12
1.3. PREPARING A CONTROL NODE	12
1.4. PREPARING A MANAGED NODE	14
1.5. VERIFYING ACCESS FROM THE CONTROL NODE TO MANAGED NODES	16
CHAPTER 2. CHANGING BASIC ENVIRONMENT SETTINGS	17
2.1. CONFIGURING THE DATE AND TIME	17
2.1.1. Displaying the current date and time	17
2.2. CONFIGURING THE SYSTEM LOCALE	17
2.3. CONFIGURING THE KEYBOARD LAYOUT	18
2.4. CHANGING THE LANGUAGE USING DESKTOP GUI	19
2.5. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	21
CHAPTER 3. CONFIGURING AND MANAGING NETWORK ACCESS	22
3.1. CONFIGURING THE NETWORK AND HOST NAME IN THE GRAPHICAL INSTALLATION MODE	22
3.2. CONFIGURING A STATIC ETHERNET CONNECTION USING NMCLI	23
3.3. CONFIGURING A DYNAMIC ETHERNET CONNECTION USING NMTUI	25
3.4. CONFIGURING A STATIC ETHERNET CONNECTION USING NMTUI	26
3.5. MANAGING NETWORKING IN THE RHEL WEB CONSOLE	29
3.6. MANAGING NETWORKING USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES	30
3.7. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	31
CHAPTER 4. REGISTERING THE SYSTEM AND MANAGING SUBSCRIPTIONS	32
4.1. REGISTERING THE SYSTEM AFTER THE INSTALLATION	32
4.2. REGISTERING SUBSCRIPTIONS WITH CREDENTIALS IN THE WEB CONSOLE	33
4.3. REGISTERING A SYSTEM USING RED HAT ACCOUNT ON GNOME	34
4.4. REGISTERING A SYSTEM USING AN ACTIVATION KEY ON GNOME	35
4.5. REGISTERING RHEL 8 USING THE INSTALLER GUI	36
CHAPTER 5. MAKING SYSTEMD SERVICES START AT BOOT TIME	38
5.1. ENABLING OR DISABLING SERVICES	38
5.2. MANAGING SERVICES IN THE RHEL WEB CONSOLE	38
CHAPTER 6. CONFIGURING SYSTEM SECURITY	41
6.1. ENABLING THE FIREWALLD SERVICE	41
6.2. MANAGING FIREWALL IN THE RHEL 8 WEB CONSOLE	42
6.3. MANAGING BASIC SELINUX SETTINGS	42
6.4. ENSURING THE REQUIRED STATE OF SELINUX	43
6.5. SWITCHING SELINUX MODES IN THE RHEL 8 WEB CONSOLE	44
6.6. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	44
CHAPTER 7. GETTING STARTED WITH MANAGING USER ACCOUNTS	46
7.1. MANAGING ACCOUNTS AND GROUPS USING COMMAND LINE TOOLS	46
7.2. SYSTEM USER ACCOUNTS MANAGED IN THE WEB CONSOLE	47
7.3. ADDING NEW ACCOUNTS USING THE WEB CONSOLE	47
CHAPTER 8. DUMPING A CRASHED KERNEL FOR LATER ANALYSIS	49
8.1. WHAT IS KDUMP	49

8.2. CONFIGURING KDUMP MEMORY USAGE AND TARGET LOCATION IN WEB CONSOLE	49
8.3. KDUMP USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES	51
8.4. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	52
CHAPTER 9. RECOVERING AND RESTORING A SYSTEM	53
9.1. SETTING UP REAR	53
9.2. USING A REAR RESCUE IMAGE ON THE 64-BIT IBM Z ARCHITECTURE	54
CHAPTER 10. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS USING LOG FILES	57
10.1. SERVICES HANDLING SYSLOG MESSAGES	57
10.2. SUBDIRECTORIES STORING SYSLOG MESSAGES	57
10.3. INSPECTING LOG FILES USING THE WEB CONSOLE	57
10.4. VIEWING LOGS USING THE COMMAND LINE	58
10.5. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	59
CHAPTER 11. ACCESSING THE RED HAT SUPPORT	60
11.1. OBTAINING RED HAT SUPPORT THROUGH RED HAT CUSTOMER PORTAL	60
11.2. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS USING SOSREPORT	60
CHAPTER 12. MANAGING SOFTWARE PACKAGES	62
12.1. SOFTWARE MANAGEMENT TOOLS IN RHEL 8	62
12.2. APPLICATION STREAMS	62
12.3. SEARCHING FOR SOFTWARE PACKAGES	62
12.3.1. Searching packages with YUM	63
12.3.2. Listing packages with YUM	63
12.3.3. Listing repositories with YUM	64
12.3.4. Displaying package information with YUM	64
12.3.5. Listing package groups with YUM	64
12.3.6. Specifying global expressions in YUM input	65
12.4. INSTALLING SOFTWARE PACKAGES	65
12.4.1. Installing packages with YUM	65
12.4.2. Installing a package group with YUM	66
12.4.3. Specifying a package name in YUM input	67
12.5. UPDATING SOFTWARE PACKAGES	67
12.5.1. Checking for updates with YUM	67
12.5.2. Updating a single package with YUM	68
12.5.3. Updating a package group with YUM	68
12.5.4. Updating all packages and their dependencies with YUM	68
12.5.5. Updating security-related packages with YUM	68
12.5.6. Automating software updates	69
12.5.6.1. Installing DNF Automatic	69
12.5.6.2. DNF Automatic configuration file	69
12.5.6.3. Enabling DNF Automatic	70
12.5.6.4. Overview of the systemd timer units included in the dnf-automatic package	72
12.6. UNINSTALLING SOFTWARE PACKAGES	73
12.6.1. Removing packages with YUM	73
12.6.2. Removing a package group with YUM	73
12.6.3. Specifying a package name in YUM input	74
12.7. MANAGING SOFTWARE PACKAGE GROUPS	74
12.7.1. Listing package groups with YUM	74
12.7.2. Installing a package group with YUM	75
12.7.3. Removing a package group with YUM	75
12.7.4. Specifying global expressions in YUM input	76
12.8. HANDLING PACKAGE MANAGEMENT HISTORY	76

12.8.1. Listing transactions with YUM	76
12.8.2. Reverting transactions with YUM	77
12.8.3. Repeating transactions with YUM	77
12.8.4. Specifying global expressions in YUM input	78
12.9. MANAGING SOFTWARE REPOSITORIES	78
12.9.1. Setting YUM repository options	78
12.9.2. Adding a YUM repository	79
12.9.3. Enabling a YUM repository	79
12.9.4. Disabling a YUM repository	80
12.10. CONFIGURING YUM	80
12.10.1. Viewing the current YUM configurations	80
12.10.2. Setting YUM main options	80
12.10.3. Using YUM plug-ins	80
12.10.3.1. Managing YUM plug-ins	81
12.10.3.2. Enabling YUM plug-ins	81
12.10.3.3. Disabling YUM plug-ins	81
CHAPTER 13. INTRODUCTION TO SYSTEMD	83
13.1. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	84
CHAPTER 14. MANAGING SYSTEM SERVICES WITH SYSTEMCTL	85
14.1. LISTING SYSTEM SERVICES	85
14.2. DISPLAYING SYSTEM SERVICE STATUS	86
14.3. STARTING A SYSTEM SERVICE	88
14.4. STOPPING A SYSTEM SERVICE	89
14.5. RESTARTING A SYSTEM SERVICE	90
14.6. ENABLING A SYSTEM SERVICE	91
14.7. DISABLING A SYSTEM SERVICE	92
CHAPTER 15. WORKING WITH SYSTEMD TARGETS	93
15.1. VIEWING THE DEFAULT TARGET	93
15.2. VIEWING THE TARGET UNITS	93
15.3. CHANGING THE DEFAULT TARGET	94
15.4. CHANGING THE DEFAULT TARGET USING A SYMBOLIC LINK	95
15.5. CHANGING THE CURRENT TARGET	96
15.6. BOOTING TO RESCUE MODE	96
15.7. BOOTING TO EMERGENCY MODE	97
CHAPTER 16. SHUTTING DOWN, SUSPENDING, AND HIBERNATING THE SYSTEM	98
16.1. SYSTEM SHUTDOWN	98
16.2. SHUTTING DOWN THE SYSTEM USING THE SHUTDOWN COMMAND	98
16.3. SHUTTING DOWN THE SYSTEM USING THE SYSTEMCTL COMMAND	99
16.4. RESTARTING THE SYSTEM	99
16.5. SUSPENDING THE SYSTEM	100
16.6. HIBERNATING THE SYSTEM	100
16.7. OVERVIEW OF THE POWER MANAGEMENT COMMANDS WITH SYSTEMCTL	101
CHAPTER 17. WORKING WITH SYSTEMD UNIT FILES	102
17.1. INTRODUCTION TO UNIT FILES	102
17.2. UNIT FILE STRUCTURE	102
17.3. IMPORTANT [UNIT] SECTION OPTIONS	103
17.4. IMPORTANT [SERVICE] SECTION OPTIONS	104
17.5. IMPORTANT [INSTALL] SECTION OPTIONS	105
17.6. CREATING CUSTOM UNIT FILES	105

17.7. CREATING A CUSTOM UNIT FILE BY USING THE SECOND INSTANCE OF THE SSHD SERVICE	107
17.8. CONVERTING SYSV INIT SCRIPTS TO UNIT FILES	108
17.9. FINDING THE SYSTEMD SERVICE DESCRIPTION	109
17.10. FINDING THE SYSTEMD SERVICE DEPENDENCIES	109
17.11. FINDING DEFAULT TARGETS OF THE SERVICE	110
17.12. FINDING FILES USED BY THE SERVICE	110
17.13. MODIFYING EXISTING UNIT FILES	112
17.14. EXTENDING THE DEFAULT UNIT CONFIGURATION	113
17.15. OVERRIDING THE DEFAULT UNIT CONFIGURATION	114
17.16. CHANGING THE TIMEOUT LIMIT	115
17.17. MONITORING OVERRIDDEN UNITS	115
17.18. WORKING WITH INSTANTIATED UNITS	116
17.19. IMPORTANT UNIT SPECIFIERS	117
17.20. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	118
CHAPTER 18. OPTIMIZING SYSTEMD TO SHORTEN THE BOOT TIME	119
18.1. EXAMINING SYSTEM BOOT PERFORMANCE	119
Analyzing overall boot time	119
Analyzing unit initialization time	119
Identifying critical units	119
18.2. A GUIDE TO SELECTING SERVICES THAT CAN BE SAFELY DISABLED	120
18.3. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	124
CHAPTER 19. INTRODUCTION TO MANAGING USER AND GROUP ACCOUNTS	125
19.1. INTRODUCTION TO USERS AND GROUPS	125
19.2. CONFIGURING RESERVED USER AND GROUP IDS	125
19.3. USER PRIVATE GROUPS	126
CHAPTER 20. MANAGING USER ACCOUNTS IN THE WEB CONSOLE	127
20.1. SYSTEM USER ACCOUNTS MANAGED IN THE WEB CONSOLE	127
20.2. ADDING NEW ACCOUNTS USING THE WEB CONSOLE	127
20.3. ENFORCING PASSWORD EXPIRATION IN THE WEB CONSOLE	128
20.4. TERMINATING USER SESSIONS IN THE WEB CONSOLE	129
CHAPTER 21. MANAGING USERS FROM THE COMMAND LINE	131
21.1. ADDING A NEW USER FROM THE COMMAND LINE	131
21.2. ADDING A NEW GROUP FROM THE COMMAND LINE	131
21.3. ADDING A USER TO A SUPPLEMENTARY GROUP FROM THE COMMAND LINE	132
21.4. CREATING A GROUP DIRECTORY	133
CHAPTER 22. EDITING USER GROUPS USING THE COMMAND LINE	135
22.1. PRIMARY AND SUPPLEMENTARY USER GROUPS	135
22.2. LISTING THE PRIMARY AND SUPPLEMENTARY GROUPS OF A USER	135
22.3. CHANGING THE PRIMARY GROUP OF A USER	136
22.4. ADDING A USER TO A SUPPLEMENTARY GROUP FROM THE COMMAND LINE	137
22.5. REMOVING A USER FROM A SUPPLEMENTARY GROUP	137
22.6. CHANGING ALL OF THE SUPPLEMENTARY GROUPS OF A USER	138
CHAPTER 23. MANAGING SUDO ACCESS	140
23.1. USER AUTHORIZATIONS IN SUDOERS	140
23.2. GRANTING SUDO ACCESS TO A USER	141
23.3. ENABLING UNPRIVILEGED USERS TO RUN CERTAIN COMMANDS	142
CHAPTER 24. CHANGING AND RESETTING THE ROOT PASSWORD	144
24.1. CHANGING THE ROOT PASSWORD AS THE ROOT USER	144

24.2. CHANGING OR RESETTING THE FORGOTTEN ROOT PASSWORD AS A NON-ROOT USER	144
24.3. RESETTING THE ROOT PASSWORD ON BOOT	144
CHAPTER 25. MANAGING FILE PERMISSIONS	147
25.1. BASE FILE PERMISSIONS	147
25.2. USER FILE-CREATION MODE MASK	149
25.3. DEFAULT FILE PERMISSIONS	150
25.4. CHANGING FILE PERMISSIONS USING SYMBOLIC VALUES	152
25.5. CHANGING FILE PERMISSIONS USING OCTAL VALUES	154
CHAPTER 26. MANAGING THE UMASK	155
26.1. DISPLAYING THE CURRENT VALUE OF THE UMASK	155
26.2. DISPLAYING THE DEFAULT BASH UMASK	155
26.3. SETTING THE UMASK USING SYMBOLIC VALUES	156
26.4. SETTING THE UMASK USING OCTAL VALUES	157
26.5. CHANGING THE DEFAULT UMASK FOR THE NON-LOGIN SHELL	157
26.6. CHANGING THE DEFAULT UMASK FOR THE LOGIN SHELL	158
26.7. CHANGING THE DEFAULT UMASK FOR A SPECIFIC USER	158
26.8. SETTING DEFAULT PERMISSIONS FOR NEWLY CREATED HOME DIRECTORIES	158
CHAPTER 27. USING DNSTAP IN RHEL	160
27.1. RECORDING DNS QUERIES USING DNSTAP IN RHEL	160
CHAPTER 28. MANAGING THE ACCESS CONTROL LIST	162
28.1. DISPLAYING THE CURRENT ACCESS CONTROL LIST	162
28.2. SETTING THE ACCESS CONTROL LIST	162
CHAPTER 29. USING THE CHRONY SUITE TO CONFIGURE NTP	164
29.1. INTRODUCTION TO CHRONY SUITE	164
29.2. USING CHRONYC TO CONTROL CHRONYD	164
29.3. MIGRATING TO CHRONY	165
29.3.1. Migration script	166
CHAPTER 30. USING CHRONY	167
30.1. MANAGING CHRONY	167
30.2. CHECKING IF CHRONY IS SYNCHRONIZED	167
30.3. MANUALLY ADJUSTING THE SYSTEM CLOCK	168
30.4. SETTING UP CHRONY FOR A SYSTEM IN AN ISOLATED NETWORK	169
30.5. CONFIGURING REMOTE MONITORING ACCESS	170
30.6. MANAGING TIME SYNCHRONIZATION USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES	171
30.7. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	172
CHAPTER 31. CHRONY WITH HW TIMESTAMPING	173
31.1. VERIFYING SUPPORT FOR HARDWARE TIMESTAMPING	173
31.2. ENABLING HARDWARE TIMESTAMPING	174
31.3. CONFIGURING CLIENT POLLING INTERVAL	174
31.4. ENABLING INTERLEAVED MODE	174
31.5. CONFIGURING SERVER FOR LARGE NUMBER OF CLIENTS	175
31.6. VERIFYING HARDWARE TIMESTAMPING	175
31.7. CONFIGURING PTP-NTP BRIDGE	176
CHAPTER 32. ACHIEVING SOME SETTINGS PREVIOUSLY SUPPORTED BY NTP IN CHRONY	177
32.1. MONITORING BY NTPQ AND NTPDC	177
32.2. USING AUTHENTICATION MECHANISM BASED ON PUBLIC KEY CRYPTOGRAPHY	177
32.3. USING EPHEMERAL SYMMETRIC ASSOCIATIONS	178

32.4. MULTICAST/BROADCAST CLIENT	178
CHAPTER 33. OVERVIEW OF NETWORK TIME SECURITY (NTS) IN CHRONY	179
33.1. ENABLING NETWORK TIME SECURITY (NTS) IN THE CLIENT CONFIGURATION FILE	179
33.2. ENABLING NETWORK TIME SECURITY (NTS) ON THE SERVER	180
CHAPTER 34. USING SECURE COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN TWO SYSTEMS WITH OPENSSH	182
34.1. SSH AND OPENSSH	182
34.2. CONFIGURING AND STARTING AN OPENSSH SERVER	183
34.3. SETTING AN OPENSSH SERVER FOR KEY-BASED AUTHENTICATION	184
34.4. GENERATING SSH KEY PAIRS	185
34.5. USING SSH KEYS STORED ON A SMART CARD	187
34.6. MAKING OPENSSH MORE SECURE	188
34.7. CONNECTING TO A REMOTE SERVER USING AN SSH JUMP HOST	190
34.8. CONNECTING TO REMOTE MACHINES WITH SSH KEYS USING SSH-AGENT	192
34.9. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	192
CHAPTER 35. CONFIGURING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION	194
35.1. THE RSYSLOG LOGGING SERVICE	194
35.2. INSTALLING RSYSLOG DOCUMENTATION	194
35.3. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR REMOTE LOGGING OVER TCP	195
35.4. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER TCP	197
35.5. CONFIGURING TLS-ENCRYPTED REMOTE LOGGING	198
35.6. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR RECEIVING REMOTE LOGGING INFORMATION OVER UDP	201
35.7. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER UDP	203
35.8. LOAD BALANCING HELPER IN RSYSLOG	205
35.9. CONFIGURING RELIABLE REMOTE LOGGING	205
35.10. SUPPORTED RSYSLOG MODULES	207
35.11. CONFIGURING THE NETCONSOLE SERVICE TO LOG KERNEL MESSAGES TO A REMOTE HOST	207
35.12. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	208
CHAPTER 36. USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE	209
36.1. THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE	209
36.2. LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE PARAMETERS	209
36.3. APPLYING A LOCAL LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE	210
36.4. FILTERING LOGS IN A LOCAL LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE	212
36.5. APPLYING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE	214
36.6. USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE WITH TLS	217
36.6.1. Configuring client logging with TLS	217
36.6.2. Configuring server logging with TLS	219
36.7. USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLES WITH RELP	220
36.7.1. Configuring client logging with RELP	221
36.7.2. Configuring server logging with RELP	223
36.8. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	224
CHAPTER 37. INTRODUCTION TO PYTHON	225
37.1. PYTHON VERSIONS	225
CHAPTER 38. INSTALLING AND USING PYTHON	227
38.1. INSTALLING PYTHON 3	227
38.2. INSTALLING ADDITIONAL PYTHON 3 PACKAGES	228
38.3. INSTALLING ADDITIONAL PYTHON 3 TOOLS FOR DEVELOPERS	228
38.4. INSTALLING PYTHON 2	229
38.5. MIGRATING FROM PYTHON 2 TO PYTHON 3	230
38.6. USING PYTHON	230

CHAPTER 39. CONFIGURING THE UNVERSIONED PYTHON	232
39.1. CONFIGURING THE UNVERSIONED PYTHON COMMAND DIRECTLY	232
39.2. CONFIGURING THE UNVERSIONED PYTHON COMMAND TO THE REQUIRED PYTHON VERSION INTERACTIVELY	232
39.3. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	233
CHAPTER 40. PACKAGING PYTHON 3 RPMS	234
40.1. SPEC FILE DESCRIPTION FOR A PYTHON PACKAGE	234
40.2. COMMON MACROS FOR PYTHON 3 RPMS	236
40.3. AUTOMATIC PROVIDES FOR PYTHON RPMS	236
CHAPTER 41. HANDLING INTERPRETER DIRECTIVES IN PYTHON SCRIPTS	237
41.1. MODIFYING INTERPRETER DIRECTIVES IN PYTHON SCRIPTS	237
41.2. CHANGING /USR/BIN/PYTHON3 INTERPRETER DIRECTIVES IN YOUR CUSTOM PACKAGES	238
CHAPTER 42. USING THE PHP SCRIPTING LANGUAGE	239
42.1. INSTALLING THE PHP SCRIPTING LANGUAGE	239
42.2. USING THE PHP SCRIPTING LANGUAGE WITH A WEB SERVER	240
42.2.1. Using PHP with the Apache HTTP Server	240
42.2.2. Using PHP with the nginx web server	241
42.3. RUNNING A PHP SCRIPT USING THE COMMAND-LINE INTERFACE	243
42.4. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES	244
CHAPTER 43. USING LANGPACKS	245
43.1. CHECKING LANGUAGES THAT PROVIDE LANGPACKS	245
43.2. WORKING WITH RPM WEAK DEPENDENCY-BASED LANGPACKS	245
43.2.1. Listing already installed language support	245
43.2.2. Checking the availability of language support	245
43.2.3. Listing packages installed for a language	246
43.2.4. Installing language support	246
43.2.5. Removing language support	246
43.3. SAVING DISK SPACE BY USING GLIBC-LANGPACK-<LOCALE_CODE>	246
CHAPTER 44. GETTING STARTED WITH TCL/TK	248
44.1. INTRODUCTION TO TCL/TK	248
44.2. NOTABLE CHANGES IN TCL/TK 8.6	248
44.3. MIGRATING TO TCL/TK 8.6	249
44.3.1. Migration path for developers of Tcl extensions	249
44.3.2. Migration path for users scripting their tasks with Tcl/Tk	249

MAKING OPEN SOURCE MORE INCLUSIVE

Red Hat is committed to replacing problematic language in our code, documentation, and web properties. We are beginning with these four terms: master, slave, blacklist, and whitelist. Because of the enormity of this endeavor, these changes will be implemented gradually over several upcoming releases. For more details, see [our CTO Chris Wright's message](#).

PROVIDING FEEDBACK ON RED HAT DOCUMENTATION

We appreciate your feedback on our documentation. Let us know how we can improve it.

Submitting comments on specific passages

1. View the documentation in the **Multi-page HTML** format and ensure that you see the **Feedback** button in the upper right corner after the page fully loads.
2. Use your cursor to highlight the part of the text that you want to comment on.
3. Click the **Add Feedback** button that appears near the highlighted text.
4. Add your feedback and click **Submit**.

Submitting feedback through Bugzilla (account required)

1. Log in to the [Bugzilla](#) website.
2. Select the correct version from the **Version** menu.
3. Enter a descriptive title in the **Summary** field.
4. Enter your suggestion for improvement in the **Description** field. Include links to the relevant parts of the documentation.
5. Click **Submit Bug**.

CHAPTER 1. PREPARING A CONTROL NODE AND MANAGED NODES TO USE RHEL SYSTEM ROLES

Before you can use individual RHEL System Roles to manage services and settings, prepare the involved hosts.

1.1. INTRODUCTION TO RHEL SYSTEM ROLES

RHEL System Roles is a collection of Ansible roles and modules. RHEL System Roles provide a configuration interface to remotely manage multiple RHEL systems. The interface enables managing system configurations across multiple versions of RHEL, as well as adopting new major releases.

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, the interface currently consists of the following roles:

- Certificate Issuance and Renewal (**certificate**)
- Cockpit (**cockpit**)
- Firewalld (**firewall**)
- HA Cluster (**ha_cluster**)
- Kernel Dumps (**kdump**)
- Kernel Settings (**kernel_settings**)
- Logging (**logging**)
- Metrics (PCP) (**metrics**)
- Microsoft SQL Server (**microsoft.sql.server**)
- Networking (**network**)
- Network Bound Disk Encryption client and Network Bound Disk Encryption server (**nbde_client** and **nbde_server**)
- Postfix (**postfix**)
- SELinux (**selinux**)
- SSH client (**ssh**)
- SSH server (**sshd**)
- Storage (**storage**)
- Terminal Session Recording (**tlog**)
- Time Synchronization (**timesync**)
- VPN (**vpn**)

All these roles are provided by the **rhel-system-roles** package available in the **AppStream** repository.

Additional resources

- [Red Hat Enterprise Linux \(RHEL\) System Roles](#)
- `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/` provided by the **rhel-system-roles** package.

1.2. RHEL SYSTEM ROLES TERMINOLOGY

You can find the following terms across this documentation:

Ansible playbook

Playbooks are Ansible's configuration, deployment, and orchestration language. They can describe a policy you want your remote systems to enforce, or a set of steps in a general IT process.

Control node

Any machine with Ansible installed. You can run commands and playbooks, invoking `/usr/bin/ansible` or `/usr/bin/ansible-playbook`, from any control node. You can use any computer that has Python installed on it as a control node – laptops, shared desktops, and servers can all run Ansible. However, you cannot use a Windows machine as a control node. You can have multiple control nodes.

Inventory

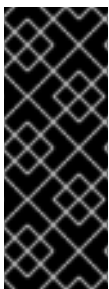
A list of managed nodes. An inventory file is also sometimes called a "hostfile". Your inventory can specify information like IP address for each managed node. An inventory can also organize managed nodes, creating and nesting groups for easier scaling. To learn more about inventory, see the [Working with Inventory](#) section.

Managed nodes

The network devices, servers, or both that you manage with Ansible. Managed nodes are also sometimes called "hosts". Ansible is not installed on managed nodes.

1.3. PREPARING A CONTROL NODE

RHEL includes **Ansible Core** in the **AppStream** repository with a limited scope of support. If you require additional support for Ansible, contact Red Hat to learn more about the **Ansible Automation Platform** subscription.



IMPORTANT

On RHEL 8.6 and later, use **Ansible Core** if you do not have a **Red Hat Ansible Automation Platform** subscription. Do not install **Ansible Engine** from the **ansible-2-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms** repository. Packages in this repository might not be compatible with Ansible automation content in RHEL 8.6 and later. Additionally, Red Hat does not provide security updates and bug fixes for **Ansible Engine** for the same amount of time as for RHEL. For further details, see [Using Ansible in RHEL 8.6 and later](#).

Prerequisites

- You installed RHEL 8.6 or later.
- You registered the system to the Customer Portal.
- You attached a **Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server** subscription to the system.
- If available in your Customer Portal account, you attached an **Ansible Automation Platform** subscription to the system.

Procedure

1. Install the **rhel-system-roles** package:

```
[root@control-node]# yum install rhel-system-roles
```

This command installs **Ansible Core** as a dependency.

2. Create a user that you later use to manage and execute playbooks:

```
[root@control-node]# useradd ansible
```

3. Switch to the newly created **ansible** user:

```
[root@control-node]# su - ansible
```

Perform the rest of the procedure as this user.

4. Create an SSH public and private key

```
[ansible@control-node]$ ssh-keygen
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/home/ansible/.ssh/id_rsa): password
...
```

Use the suggested default location for the key file.

5. Optional: Configure an SSH agent to prevent Ansible from prompting you for the SSH key password each time you establish a connection.
6. Create the `~/.ansible.cfg` file with the following content:

```
[defaults]
inventory = /home/ansible/inventory
remote_user = ansible

[privilege_escalation]
become = True
become_method = sudo
become_user = root
become_ask_pass = True
```

With these settings:

- Ansible manages hosts in the specified inventory file.
- Ansible uses the account set in the **remote_user** parameter when it establishes SSH connections to managed nodes.
- Ansible uses the **sudo** utility to execute tasks on managed nodes as the **root** user. For security reasons, configure **sudo** on managed nodes to require entering the password of the remote user to become **root**. By specifying the **become_ask_pass=True** setting in `~/.ansible.cfg`, Ansible prompts for this password when you execute a playbook.

Settings in the `~/.ansible.cfg` file have a higher priority and override settings from the global `/etc/ansible/ansible.cfg` file.

7. Create the `~/inventory` file. For example, the following is an inventory file in the INI format with three hosts and one host group named **US**:

```
managed-node-01.example.com

[US]
managed-node-02.example.com ansible_host=192.0.2.100
managed-node-03.example.com
```

Note that the control node must be able to resolve the hostnames. If the DNS server cannot resolve certain hostnames, add the **ansible_host** parameter next to the host entry to specify its IP address.

Verification

1. [Prepare a managed node](#).
2. [Verify access from the control node to managed nodes](#)

Additional resources

- [Scope of support for the Ansible Core package included in the RHEL 9 and RHEL 8.6 and later AppStream repositories](#)
- [How to register and subscribe a system to the Red Hat Customer Portal using subscription-manager](#)
- The **ssh-keygen(1)** man page
- [Connecting to remote machines with SSH keys using ssh-agent](#)
- [Ansible configuration settings](#)
- [How to build your inventory](#)
- [Updates to using Ansible in RHEL 8.6 and 9.0](#)

1.4. PREPARING A MANAGED NODE

Ansible does not use an agent on managed hosts. The only requirements are Python, which is installed by default on RHEL, and SSH access to the managed host.

However, direct SSH access as the **root** user can be a security risk. Therefore, when you prepare a managed node, you create a local user on this node and configure a **sudo** policy. Ansible on the control node can then use this account to log in to the managed node and execute playbooks as different users, such as **root**.

Prerequisites

- You prepared the control node.

Procedure

1. Create a user:

```
[root@managed-node-01]# useradd ansible
```

The control node later uses this user to establish an SSH connection to this host.

2. Set a password to the **ansible** user:

```
[root@managed-node-01]# passwd ansible
Changing password for user ansible.
New password: password
Retype new password: password
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully.
```

You must enter this password when Ansible uses **sudo** to perform tasks as the **root** user.

3. Install the **ansible** user's SSH public key on the managed node:
 - a. Log into the control node as the **ansible** user, and copy the SSH public key to the managed node:

```
[ansible@control-node]$ ssh-copy-id managed-node-01.example.com
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: Source of key(s) to be installed:
"/home/ansible/.ssh/id_rsa.pub"
The authenticity of host 'managed-node-01.example.com (192.0.2.100)' can't be
established.
ECDSA key fingerprint is
SHA256:9bZ33GJNODK3zbNhybokN/6Mq7hu3vpBXDrCxe7NAvo.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no/[fingerprint])? yes
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: attempting to log in with the new key(s), to filter out any that
are already installed
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: 1 key(s) remain to be installed -- if you are prompted now it is
to install the new keys
ansible@managed-node-01.example.com's password: password

Number of key(s) added: 1

Now try logging into the machine, with: "ssh 'managed-node-01.example.com'"
and check to make sure that only the key(s) you wanted were added.
```

- b. Remotely execute a command on the control node to verify the SSH connection:

```
[ansible@control-node]$ ssh managed-node-01.example.com whoami
ansible
```

4. Create a **sudo** configuration for the **ansible** user:
 - a. Use the **visudo** command to create and edit the **/etc/sudoers.d/ansible** file:

```
[root@managed-node-01]# visudo /etc/sudoers.d/ansible
```

The benefit of using **visudo** over a normal editor is that this utility provides basic sanity checks and checks for parse errors before installing the file.

- b. Enter the following content to the **/etc/sudoers.d/ansible** file:

```
ansible ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: ALL
```

These settings grant permissions to the **ansible** user to run all commands as any user and group on this host without entering the password of the **ansible** user.

Additional resources

- [Preparing the control node](#)
- The **sudoers(5)** man page

1.5. VERIFYING ACCESS FROM THE CONTROL NODE TO MANAGED NODES

After you configured the control node and prepared managed nodes, test that Ansible can connect to the managed nodes.

Perform this procedure as the **ansible** user on the control node.

Prerequisites

- You prepared the control node as described in [Preparing a control node](#).
- You prepared at least one managed node as described in [Preparing a managed node](#).
- If you want to run playbooks on host groups, the managed node is listed in the inventory file on the control node.

Procedure

1. Use the Ansible **ping** module to verify that you can execute commands on an all managed hosts:

```
[ansible@control-node]$ ansible all -m ping
BECOME password: password
managed-node-01.example.com | SUCCESS => {
  "ansible_facts": {
    "discovered_interpreter_python": "/usr/bin/python3"
  },
  "changed": false,
  "ping": "pong"
}
...
```

The hard-coded **all** host group dynamically contains all hosts listed in the inventory file.

2. Use the Ansible **command** module to run the **whoami** utility on a managed host:

```
[ansible@control-node]$ ansible managed-node-01.example.com -m command -a
whoami
BECOME password: password
managed-node-01.example.com | CHANGED | rc=0 >>
root
```

If the command returns **root**, you configured **sudo** on the managed nodes correctly, and privilege escalation works.

CHAPTER 2. CHANGING BASIC ENVIRONMENT SETTINGS

Configuration of basic environment settings is a part of the installation process. The following sections guide you when you change them later. The basic configuration of the environment includes:

- Date and time
- System locales
- Keyboard layout
- Language

2.1. CONFIGURING THE DATE AND TIME

Accurate timekeeping is important for a number of reasons. In Red Hat Enterprise Linux, timekeeping is ensured by the **NTP** protocol, which is implemented by a daemon running in user space. The user-space daemon updates the system clock running in the kernel. The system clock can keep time by using various clock sources.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 uses the **chronyd** daemon to implement **NTP**. **chronyd** is available from the **chrony** package. For more information, see [Using the chrony suite to configure NTP](#).

2.1.1. Displaying the current date and time

To display the current date and time, use either of these steps.

Procedure

1. Enter the **date** command:

```
$ date
Mon Mar 30 16:02:59 CEST 2020
```

2. To see more details, use the **timedatectl** command:

```
$ timedatectl
Local time: Mon 2020-03-30 16:04:42 CEST
Universal time: Mon 2020-03-30 14:04:42 UTC
RTC time: Mon 2020-03-30 14:04:41
Time zone: Europe/Prague (CEST, +0200)
System clock synchronized: yes
NTP service: active
RTC in local TZ: no
```

Additional resources

- [Configuring time settings using the web console](#)
- **man date(1)** and **man timedatectl(1)**

2.2. CONFIGURING THE SYSTEM LOCALE

System-wide locale settings are stored in the **/etc/locale.conf** file, which is read at early boot by the **systemd** daemon. Every service or user inherits the locale settings configured in **/etc/locale.conf**, unless individual programs or individual users override them.

This section describes how to manage system locale.

Procedure

- To list available system locale settings:

```
$ localectl list-locales
C.utf8
aa_DJ
aa_DJ.iso88591
aa_DJ.utf8
...
```

- To display the current status of the system locales settings:

```
$ localectl status
```

- To set or change the default system locale settings, use a **localectl set-locale** sub-command as the **root** user. For example:

```
# localectl set-locale LANG=en_US
```

Additional resources

- **man localectl(1)**, **man locale(7)**, and **man locale.conf(5)**

2.3. CONFIGURING THE KEYBOARD LAYOUT

The keyboard layout settings control the layout used on the text console and graphical user interfaces.

Procedure

- To list available keymaps:

```
$ localectl list-keymaps
ANSI-dvorak
al
al-plisi
amiga-de
amiga-us
...
```

- To display the current status of keymaps settings:

```
$ localectl status
...
VC Keymap: us
...
```

- To set or change the default system keymap. For example:

```
# localectl set-keymap us
```

Additional resources

- **man localectl(1)**, **man locale(7)**, and **man locale.conf(5)**

2.4. CHANGING THE LANGUAGE USING DESKTOP GUI

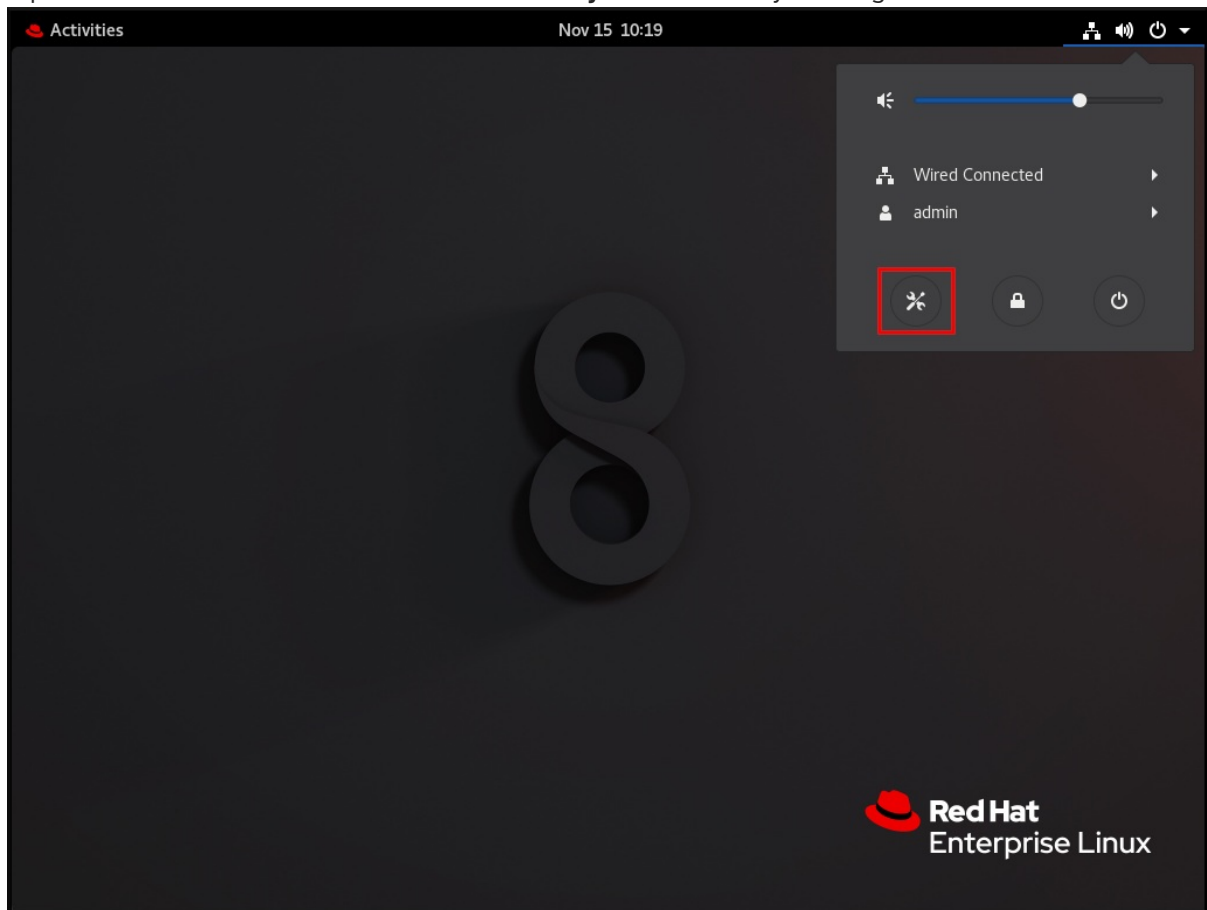
This section describes how to change the system language using the desktop GUI.

Prerequisites

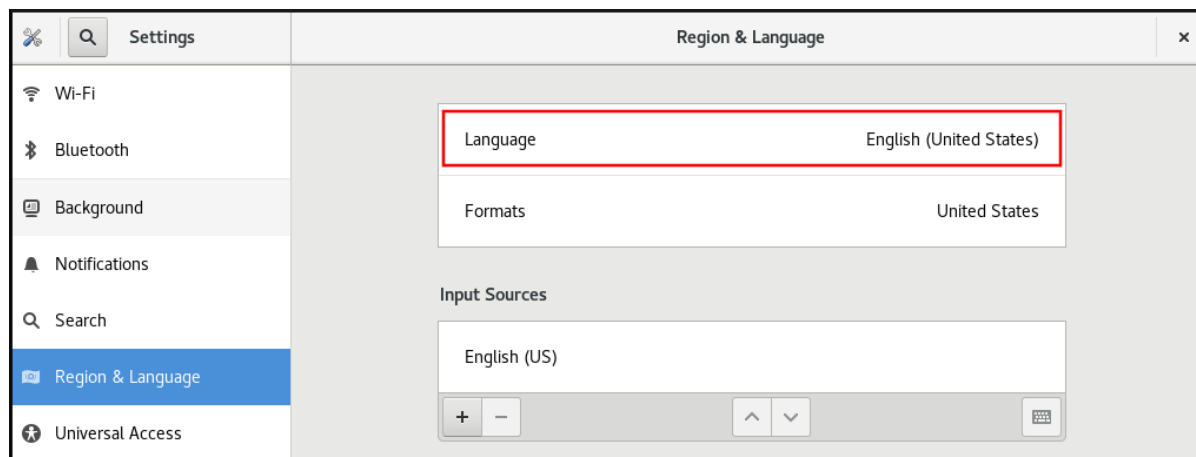
- Required language packages are installed on your system

Procedure

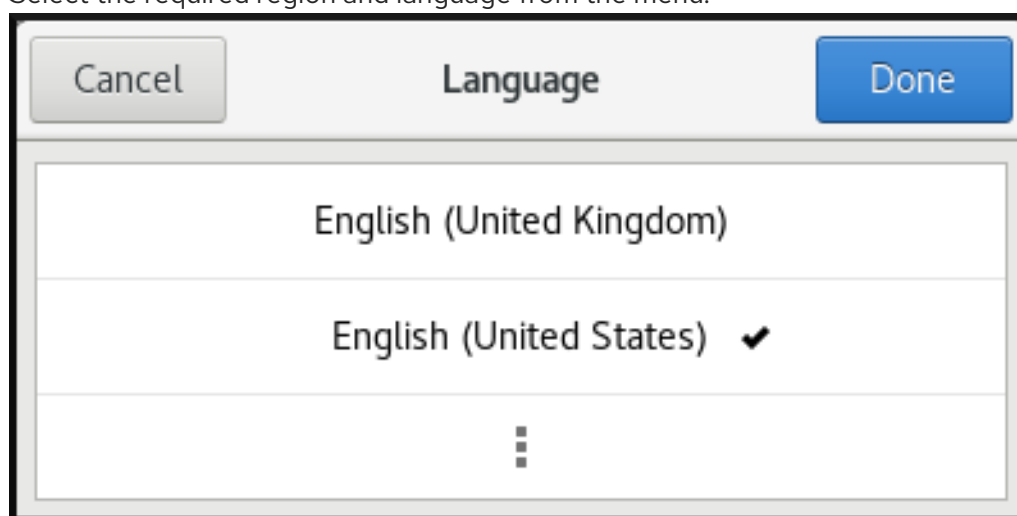
1. Open the **GNOME Control Center** from the **System menu** by clicking on its icon.



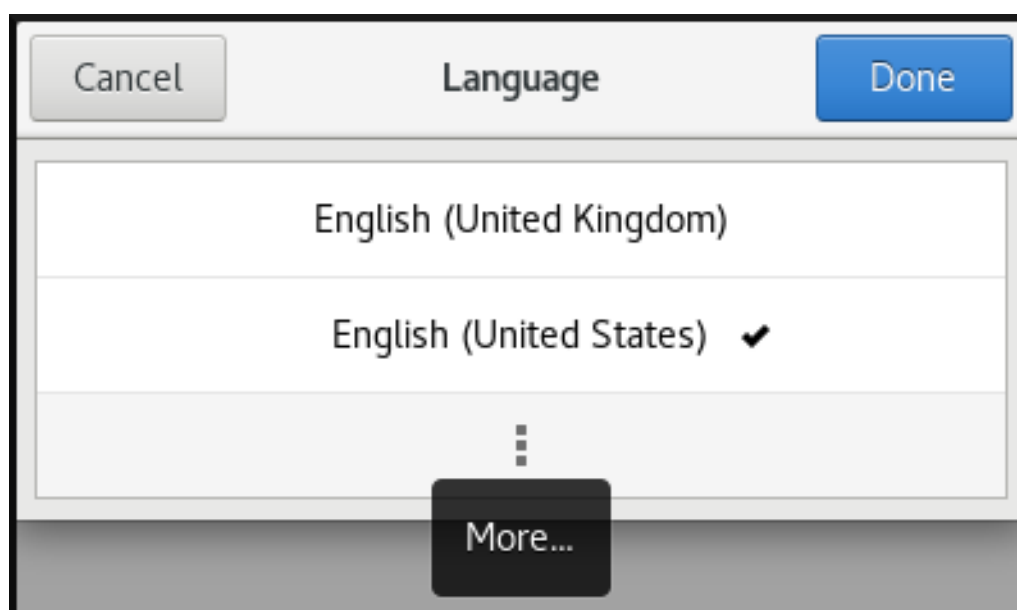
2. In the **GNOME Control Center**, choose **Region & Language** from the left vertical bar.
3. Click the **Language** menu.



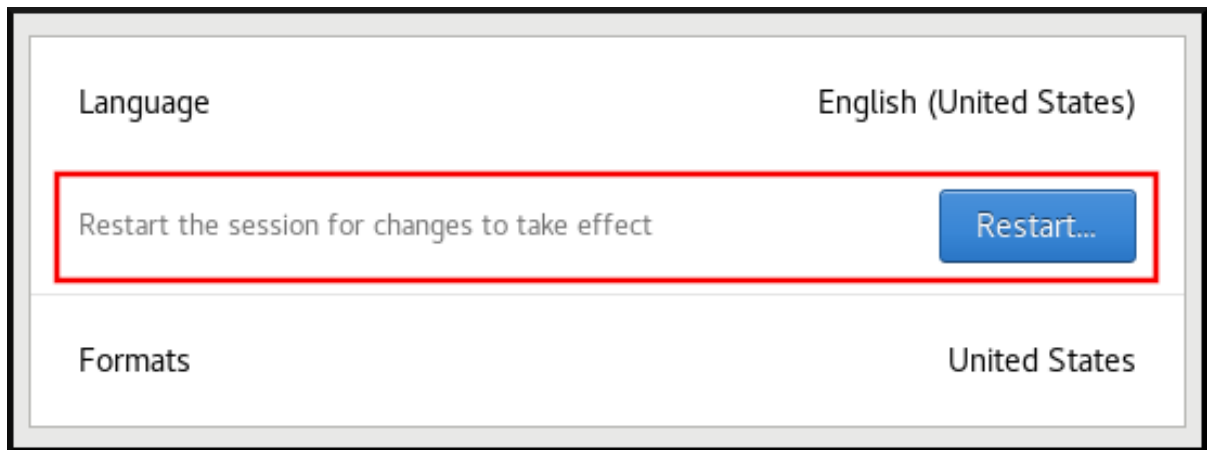
4. Select the required region and language from the menu.



If your region and language are not listed, scroll down, and click **More** to select from available regions and languages.



5. Click **Done**.
6. Click **Restart** for changes to take effect.

**NOTE**

Some applications do not support certain languages. The text of an application that cannot be translated into the selected language remains in US English.

Additional resources

- [Launching applications in GNOME](#)

2.5. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Performing a standard RHEL 8 installation](#)

CHAPTER 3. CONFIGURING AND MANAGING NETWORK ACCESS

This section describes different options on how to add Ethernet connections in Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

3.1. CONFIGURING THE NETWORK AND HOST NAME IN THE GRAPHICAL INSTALLATION MODE

Follow the steps in this procedure to configure your network and host name.

Procedure

1. From the **Installation Summary** window, click **Network and Host Name**.
2. From the list in the left-hand pane, select an interface. The details are displayed in the right-hand pane.



NOTE

- There are several types of network device naming standards used to identify network devices with persistent names, for example, **em1** and **wl3sp0**. For information about these standards, see the [Configuring and managing networking](#) document.

3. Toggle the **ON/OFF** switch to enable or disable the selected interface.



NOTE

The installation program automatically detects locally accessible interfaces, and you cannot add or remove them manually.

4. Click **+** to add a virtual network interface, which can be either: Team, Bond, Bridge, or VLAN.
5. Click **-** to remove a virtual interface.
6. Click **Configure** to change settings such as IP addresses, DNS servers, or routing configuration for an existing interface (both virtual and physical).
7. Type a host name for your system in the **Host Name** field.



NOTE

- The host name can be either a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN) in the format *hostname.domainname*, or a short host name with no domain name. Many networks have a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) service that automatically supplies connected systems with a domain name. To allow the DHCP service to assign the domain name to this machine, specify only the short host name. The value **localhost** means that no specific static host name for the target system is configured, and the actual host name of the installed system is configured during the processing of the network configuration, for example, by **NetworkManager** using DHCP or DNS.
- Host names can only contain alpha-numeric characters and - or .. Host names cannot start or end with - and ..

8. Click **Apply** to apply the host name to the installer environment.
9. Alternatively, in the **Network and Hostname** window, you can choose the Wireless option. Click **Select network** in the right-hand pane to select your wifi connection, enter the password if required, and click **Done**.

Additional resources

- [Performing an advanced RHEL 8 installation](#)

3.2. CONFIGURING A STATIC ETHERNET CONNECTION USING NMCLI

This procedure describes adding an Ethernet connection with the following settings using the **nmcli** utility:

- A static IPv4 address - **192.0.2.1** with a **/24** subnet mask
- A static IPv6 address - **2001:db8:1::1** with a **/64** subnet mask
- An IPv4 default gateway - **192.0.2.254**
- An IPv6 default gateway - **2001:db8:1::fffe**
- An IPv4 DNS server - **192.0.2.200**
- An IPv6 DNS server - **2001:db8:1::ffbb**
- A DNS search domain - **example.com**

Procedure

1. Add a new NetworkManager connection profile for the Ethernet connection:

```
# nmcli connection add con-name Example-Connection ifname enp7s0 type ethernet
```

The further steps modify the **Example-Connection** connection profile you created.

2. Set the IPv4 address:

```
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv4.addresses 192.0.2.1/24
```

3. Set the IPv6 address:

```
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv6.addresses 2001:db8:1::1/64
```

4. Set the IPv4 and IPv6 connection method to **manual**:

```
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv4.method manual
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv6.method manual
```

5. Set the IPv4 and IPv6 default gateways:

```
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv4.gateway 192.0.2.254
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv6.gateway 2001:db8:1::fffe
```

6. Set the IPv4 and IPv6 DNS server addresses:

```
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv4.dns "192.0.2.200"
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv6.dns "2001:db8:1::ffbb"
```

To set multiple DNS servers, specify them space-separated and enclosed in quotes.

7. Set the DNS search domain for the IPv4 and IPv6 connection:

```
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv4.dns-search example.com
# nmcli connection modify Example-Connection ipv6.dns-search example.com
```

8. Activate the connection profile:

```
# nmcli connection up Example-Connection
Connection successfully activated (D-Bus active path:
/org/freedesktop/NetworkManager/ActiveConnection/13)
```

Verification steps

1. Display the status of the devices and connections:

```
# nmcli device status
DEVICE    TYPE    STATE    CONNECTION
enp7s0    ethernet connected Example-Connection
```

2. Use the **ping** utility to verify that this host can send packets to other hosts:

```
# ping host_name_or_IP_address
```

Troubleshooting

- Make sure that the network cable is plugged-in to the host and a switch.
- Check whether the link failure exists only on this host or also on other hosts connected to the same switch.

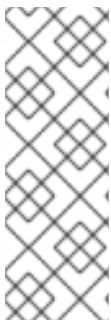
- Verify that the network cable and the network interface are working as expected. Perform hardware diagnosis steps and replace defect cables and network interface cards.
- If the configuration on the disk does not match the configuration on the device, starting or restarting NetworkManager creates an in-memory connection that reflects the configuration of the device. For further details and how to avoid this problem, see [NetworkManager duplicates a connection after restart of NetworkManager service](#).

Additional resources

- **nm-settings(5)** man page
- **nmcli(1)** man page
- [Configuring NetworkManager to avoid using a specific profile to provide a default gateway](#)

3.3. CONFIGURING A DYNAMIC ETHERNET CONNECTION USING NMTUI

The **nmtui** application provides a text-based user interface for NetworkManager. You can use **nmtui** to configure an Ethernet connection with a dynamic IP address on a host without a graphical interface.



NOTE

In **nmtui**:

- Navigate by using the cursor keys.
- Press a button by selecting it and hitting **Enter**.
- Select and deselect checkboxes by using **Space**.

Procedure

1. If you do not know the network device name you want to use in the connection, display the available devices:

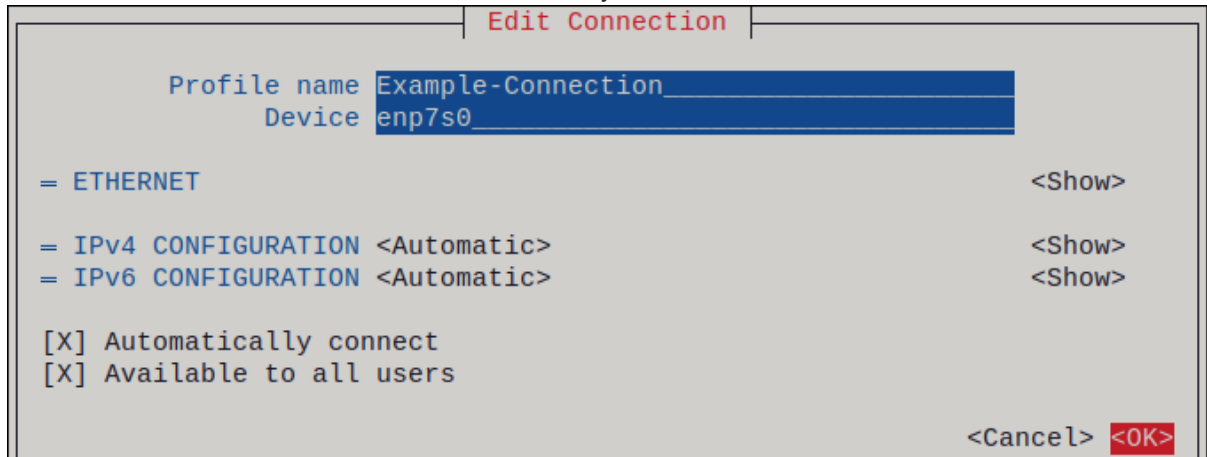
```
# nmcli device status
DEVICE  TYPE    STATE      CONNECTION
enp7s0  ethernet unavailable --
...
```

2. Start **nmtui**:

```
# nmtui
```

3. Select **Edit a connection**, and press **Enter**.
4. Press the **Add** button.
5. Select **Ethernet** from the list of network types, and press **Enter**.
6. Optional: Enter a name for the NetworkManager profile to be created.

7. Enter the network device name into the **Device** field.
8. Press the **OK** button to create and automatically activate the new connection.



9. Press the **Back** button to return to the main menu.
10. Select **Quit**, and press **Enter** to close the **nmtui** application.

Verification

1. Display the status of the devices and connections:

```
# nmcli device status
DEVICE    TYPE    STATE    CONNECTION
enp7s0    ethernet connected Example-Connection
```

2. Use the **ping** utility to verify that this host can send packets to other hosts:

```
# ping host_name_or_IP_address
```

Troubleshooting

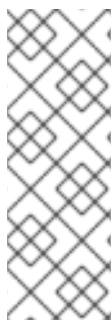
- Make sure that the network cable is plugged-in to the host and a switch.
- Check whether the link failure exists only on this host or also on other hosts connected to the same switch.
- Verify that the network cable and the network interface are working as expected. Perform hardware diagnosis steps and replace defect cables and network interface cards.
- If the configuration on the disk does not match the configuration on the device, starting or restarting NetworkManager creates an in-memory connection that reflects the configuration of the device. For further details and how to avoid this problem, see [NetworkManager duplicates a connection after restart of NetworkManager service](#).

Additional resources

- [Configuring NetworkManager to avoid using a specific profile to provide a default gateway](#)

3.4. CONFIGURING A STATIC ETHERNET CONNECTION USING NMTUI

The **nmtui** application provides a text-based user interface for NetworkManager. You can use **nmtui** to configure an Ethernet connection with a static IP address on a host without a graphical interface.



NOTE

In **nmtui**:

- Navigate by using the cursor keys.
- Press a button by selecting it and hitting **Enter**.
- Select and deselect checkboxes by using **Space**.

Procedure

1. If you do not know the network device name you want to use in the connection, display the available devices:

```
# nmcli device status
DEVICE  TYPE    STATE      CONNECTION
enp7s0  ethernet unavailable --
...
```

2. Start **nmtui**:

```
# nmtui
```

3. Select **Edit a connection**, and press **Enter**.
4. Press the **Add** button.
5. Select **Ethernet** from the list of network types, and press **Enter**.
6. Optional: Enter a name for the NetworkManager profile to be created.
7. Enter the network device name into the **Device** field.
8. Configure the IPv4 and IPv6 address settings in the **IPv4 configuration** and **IPv6 configuration** areas:
 - a. Press the **Automatic** button, and select **Manual** from the displayed list.
 - b. Press the **Show** button next to the protocol you want to configure to display additional fields.
 - c. Press the **Add** button next to **Addresses**, and enter the IP address and the subnet mask in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) format.
If you do not specify a subnet mask, NetworkManager sets a **/32** subnet mask for IPv4 addresses and **/64** for IPv6 addresses.
 - d. Enter the address of the default gateway.
 - e. Press the **Add** button next to **DNS servers**, and enter the DNS server address.
 - f. Press the **Add** button next to **Search domains**, and enter the DNS search domain.

Figure 3.1. Example of an Ethernet connection with static IP address settings

Edit Connection

Profile name `Example-Connection`

Device `enp7s0`

= ETHERNET <Show>

= IPv4 CONFIGURATION `<Manual>` <Hide>

Addresses `192.0.2.1/24` <Remove>
<Add...>

Gateway `192.0.2.254`

DNS servers `192.0.2.200` <Remove>
<Add...>

Search domains `example.com` <Remove>
<Add...>

Routing (No custom routes) <Edit...>

☐ Never use this network for default route

☐ Ignore automatically obtained routes

☐ Ignore automatically obtained DNS parameters

☐ Require IPv4 addressing for this connection

= IPv6 CONFIGURATION `<Manual>` <Hide>

Addresses `2001:db8:1::1/64` <Remove>
<Add...>

Gateway `2001:db8:1::fffe`

DNS servers `2001:db8:1::ffbb` <Remove>
<Add...>

Search domains `example.com` <Remove>
<Add...>

Routing (No custom routes) <Edit...>

☐ Never use this network for default route

☐ Ignore automatically obtained routes

☐ Ignore automatically obtained DNS parameters

☐ Require IPv6 addressing for this connection

☒ Automatically connect

☒ Available to all users

<Cancel> <OK>

9. Press the **OK** button to create and automatically activate the new connection.
10. Press the **Back** button to return to the main menu.
11. Select **Quit**, and press **Enter** to close the **nmcli** application.

Verification

1. Display the status of the devices and connections:

```
# nmcli device status
DEVICE  TYPE  STATE  CONNECTION
enp7s0  ethernet  connected  Example-Connection
```


2. Use the **ping** utility to verify that this host can send packets to other hosts:

```
# ping host_name_or_IP_address
```

Troubleshooting

- Make sure that the network cable is plugged-in to the host and a switch.
- Check whether the link failure exists only on this host or also on other hosts connected to the same switch.
- Verify that the network cable and the network interface are working as expected. Perform hardware diagnosis steps and replace defect cables and network interface cards.
- If the configuration on the disk does not match the configuration on the device, starting or restarting NetworkManager creates an in-memory connection that reflects the configuration of the device. For further details and how to avoid this problem, see [NetworkManager duplicates a connection after restart of NetworkManager service](#).

Additional resources

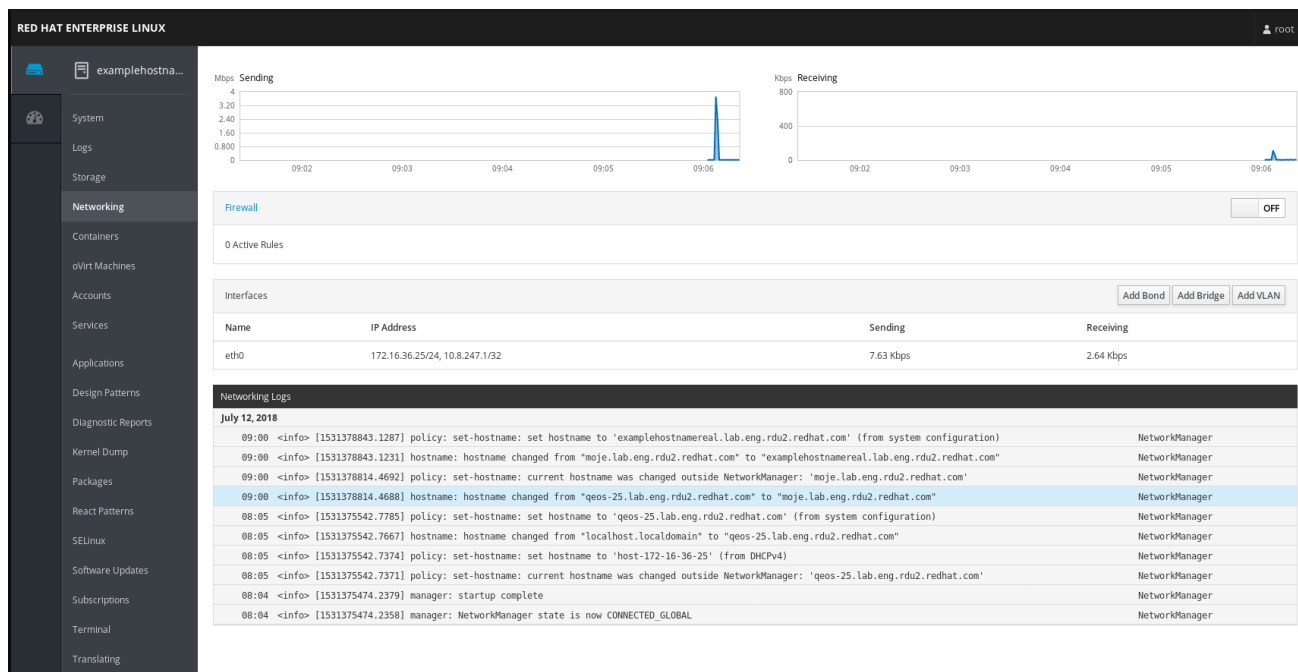
- [Configuring NetworkManager to avoid using a specific profile to provide a default gateway](#)

3.5. MANAGING NETWORKING IN THE RHEL WEB CONSOLE

In the web console, the **Networking** menu enables you:

- To display currently received and sent packets
- To display the most important characteristics of available network interfaces
- To display content of the networking logs.
- To add various types of network interfaces (bond, team, bridge, VLAN)

Figure 3.2. Managing Networking in the RHEL web console



3.6. MANAGING NETWORKING USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES

You can configure the networking connections on multiple target machines using the **network** role.

The **network** role allows to configure the following types of interfaces:

- Ethernet
- Bridge
- Bonded
- VLAN
- MacVLAN
- InfiniBand

The required networking connections for each host are provided as a list within the **network_connections** variable.



WARNING

The **network** role updates or creates all connection profiles on the target system exactly as specified in the **network_connections** variable. Therefore, the **network** role removes options from the specified profiles if the options are only present on the system but not in the **network_connections** variable.

The following example shows how to apply the **network** role to ensure that an Ethernet connection with the required parameters exists:

An example playbook applying the network role to set up an Ethernet connection with the required parameters

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: BSD-3-Clause
---
- hosts: managed-node-01.example.com
  vars:
    network_connections:

    # Create one Ethernet profile and activate it.
    # The profile uses automatic IP addressing
    # and is tied to the interface by MAC address.
    - name: prod1
      state: up
      type: ethernet
      autoconnect: yes
      mac: "00:00:5e:00:53:00"
      mtu: 1450
```

roles:

- rhel-system-roles.network

Additional resources

- [Preparing a control node and managed nodes to use RHEL System Roles](#)

3.7. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Configuring and managing networking](#)

CHAPTER 4. REGISTERING THE SYSTEM AND MANAGING SUBSCRIPTIONS

Subscriptions cover products installed on Red Hat Enterprise Linux, including the operating system itself.

You can use a subscription to Red Hat Content Delivery Network to track:

- Registered systems
- Products installed on your systems
- Subscriptions attached to the installed products

4.1. REGISTERING THE SYSTEM AFTER THE INSTALLATION

Use the following procedure to register your system if you have not registered it during the installation process already.

Prerequisites

- A valid user account in the Red Hat Customer Portal.
- See the [Create a Red Hat Login](#) page.
- An active subscription for the RHEL system.
- For more information about the installation process, see [Performing a standard RHEL 8 installation](#).

Procedure

1. Register and automatically subscribe your system in one step:

```
# subscription-manager register --username <username> --password <password> --auto-attach
Registering to: subscription.rhsm.redhat.com:443/subscription
The system has been registered with ID: 37to907c-ece6-49ea-9174-20b87ajk9ee7
The registered system name is: client1.idm.example.com
Installed Product Current Status:
Product Name: Red Hat Enterprise Linux for x86_64
Status:      Subscribed
```

The command prompts you to enter your Red Hat Customer Portal user name and password.

If the registration process fails, you can register your system with a specific pool. For guidance on how to do it, proceed with the following steps:

- a. Determine the pool ID of a subscription that you require:

```
# subscription-manager list --available
```

This command displays all available subscriptions for your Red Hat account. For every subscription, various characteristics are displayed, including the pool ID.

- b. Attach the appropriate subscription to your system by replacing *pool_id* with the pool ID determined in the previous step:

```
# subscription-manager attach --pool=pool_id
```



NOTE

To register the system with Red Hat Insights, you can use the **rhc connect** utility. See [Setting up Red Hat connector](#).

Additional resources

- [Understanding autoattaching subscriptions on the Customer Portal](#)
- [Understanding the manual registration and subscription on the Customer Portal](#)

4.2. REGISTERING SUBSCRIPTIONS WITH CREDENTIALS IN THE WEB CONSOLE

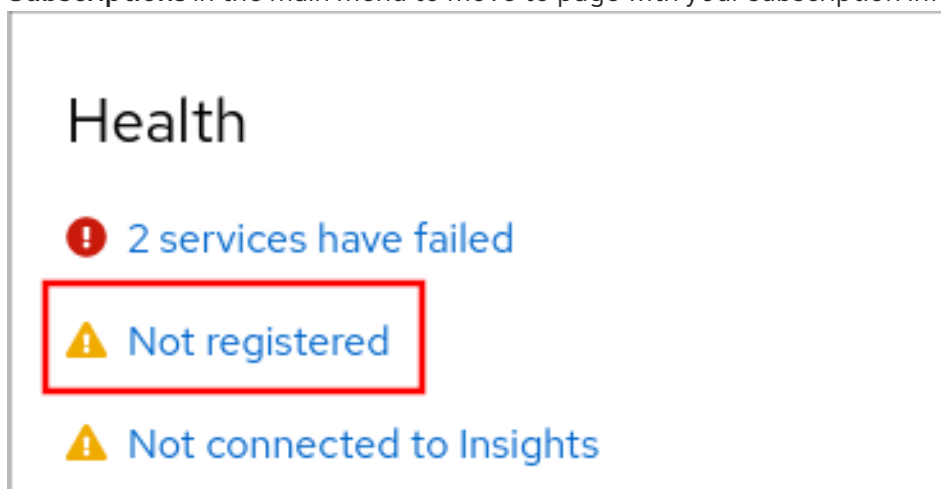
Use the following steps to register a newly installed Red Hat Enterprise Linux with account credentials using the RHEL web console.

Prerequisites

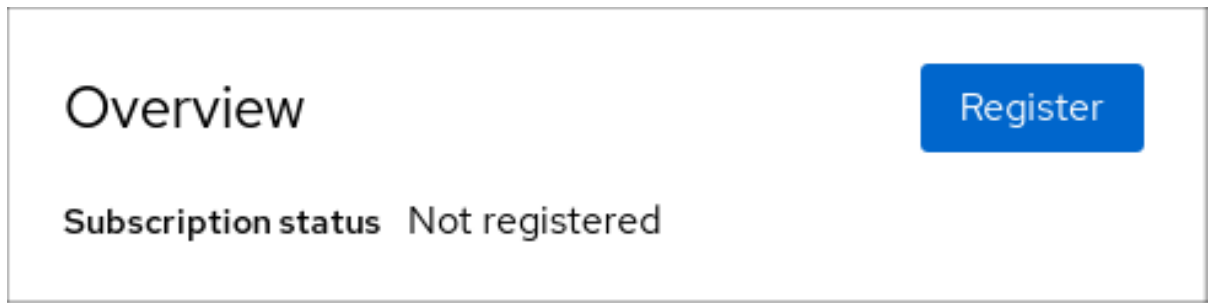
- A valid user account on the Red Hat Customer Portal.
See the [Create a Red Hat Login](#) page.
- Active subscription for your RHEL system.

Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL web console. For details, see [Logging in to the web console](#).
2. In the **Health** filed in the **Overview** page, click the **Not registered** warning, or click **Subscriptions** in the main menu to move to page with your subscription information.



3. In the **Overview** filed, click **Register**.

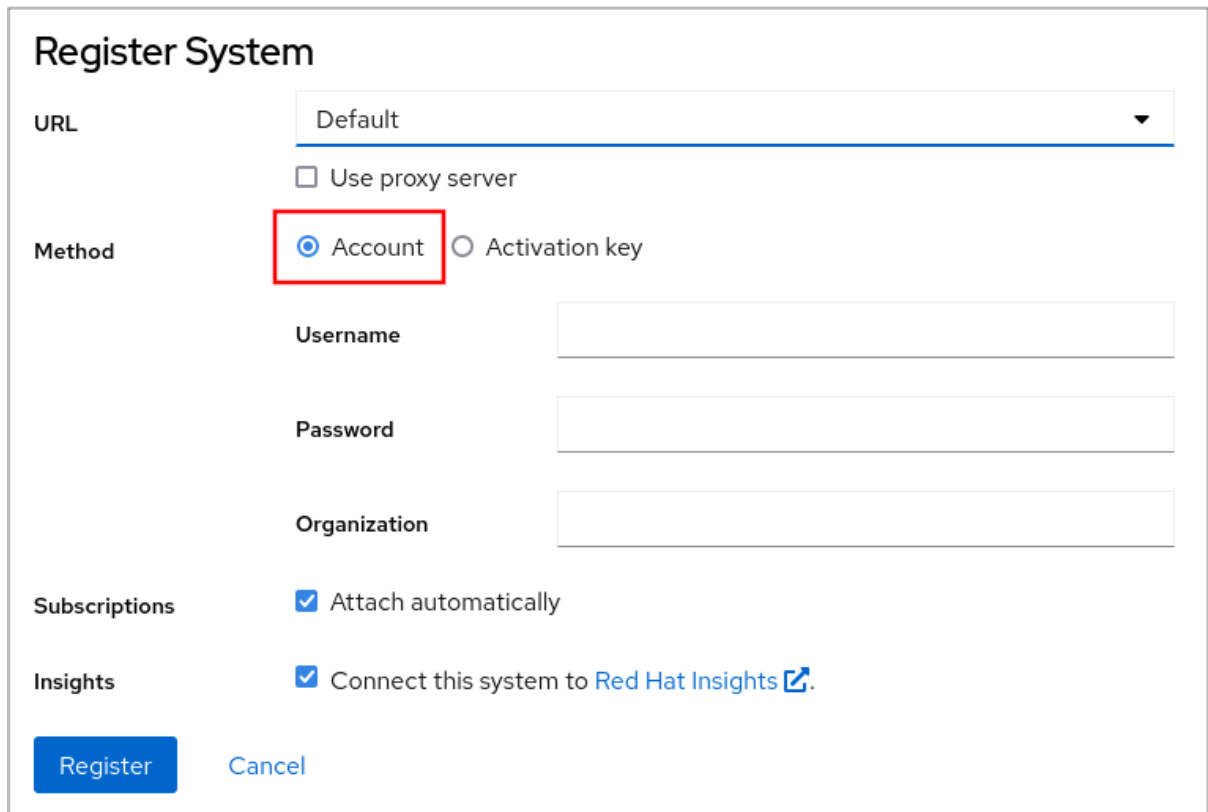


Overview

Subscription status Not registered

Register

- In the **Register system** dialog box, select that you want to register using your account credentials.



Register System

URL Default

☐ Use proxy server

Method ☒ Account ☐ Activation key

Username

Password

Organization

Subscriptions ☒ Attach automatically

Insights ☒ Connect this system to [Red Hat Insights](#)

Register Cancel

- Enter your username.
- Enter your password.
- Optionally, enter your organization's name or ID.
If your account belongs to more than one organization on the Red Hat Customer Portal, you have to add the organization name or organization ID. To get the org ID, go to your Red Hat contact point.
 - If you do not want to connect your system to Red Hat Insights, clear the **Insights** check box.
- Click the **Register** button.

At this point, your Red Hat Enterprise Linux Enterprise Linux system has been successfully registered.

4.3. REGISTERING A SYSTEM USING RED HAT ACCOUNT ON GNOME

Follow the steps in this procedure to enroll your system with your Red Hat account.

Prerequisites

- A valid account on Red Hat customer portal.
See the [Create a Red Hat Login](#) page for new user registration.

Procedure

1. Open the **system menu**, which is accessible from the upper-right screen corner, and click the **Settings** icon.
2. In the **Details → About** section, click **Register**.
3. Select **Registration Server**.
4. If you are not using the Red Hat server, enter the server address in the **URL** field.
5. In the **Registration Type** menu, select **Red Hat Account**
6. Under **Registration Details**:
 - Enter your Red Hat account user name in the **Login** field.
 - Enter your Red Hat account password in the **Password** field.
 - Enter the name of your organization in the **Organization** field.
7. Click **Register**.

4.4. REGISTERING A SYSTEM USING AN ACTIVATION KEY ON GNOME

Follow the steps in this procedure to register your system with an activation key. You can get the activation key from your organization administrator.

Prerequisites

- Activation key or keys.
See the [Activation Keys](#) page for creating new activation keys.

Procedure

1. Open the **system menu**, which is accessible from the upper-right screen corner, and click the **Settings** icon.
2. In the **Details → About** section, click **Register**.
3. Select **Registration Server**.
4. If you are not using the Red Hat server, enter the server address in the **URL** field.
5. In the **Registration Type** menu, select **Activation Keys**.
6. Under **Registration Details**:
 - Enter your activation keys in the **Activation Keys** field.
Separate your keys by a comma (,).
 - Enter the name or ID of your organization in the **Organization** field.

7. Click **Register**.

4.5. REGISTERING RHEL 8 USING THE INSTALLER GUI

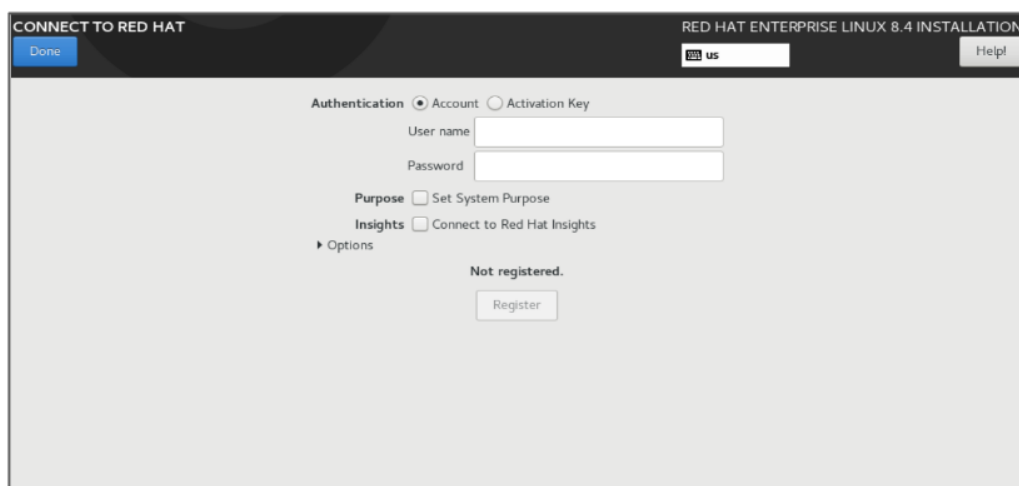
Use the following steps to register a newly installed Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 using the RHEL installer GUI.

Prerequisites

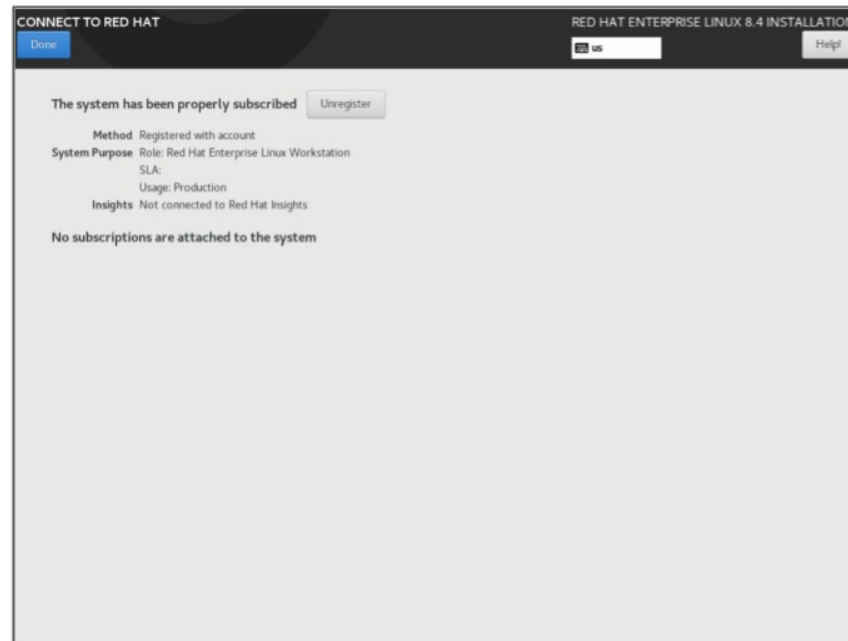
- A valid user account on the Red Hat Customer Portal. See the [Create a Red Hat Login page](#) . If the user account has appropriate entitlements (or the account operates in Simple Content Access mode) they can register using username and password only, without presenting an activation key.
- A valid Activation Key and Organization id

Procedure

1. Authenticate your Red Hat account using the **Account** or **Activation Key** option.



2. Select the **Set System Purpose** field and from the drop-down menu select the **Role, SLA,** and **Usage for the RHEL 8 installation**



At this point, your Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 system has been successfully registered.

CHAPTER 5. MAKING SYSTEMD SERVICES START AT BOOT TIME

As a system administrator, you can determine how services start on your system. For managing services, you can use the **systemctl** command-line utility for controlling the **systemd** system and service manager, or you can use the RHEL web console.

5.1. ENABLING OR DISABLING SERVICES

As a system administrator, you can enable or disable a service to start at boot, these changes apply with the next reboot. If you want a service to start automatically at boot, you must enable this service. If you disable a service, it will not start at boot, but you can start it manually. You can also mask a service, so that it cannot be started manually. Masking is a way of disabling a service that makes the service permanently unusable until it is unmasked again.

Prerequisites

- You must have root access to the system.
- The service you want to enable must not be masked. If you have a masked service, you must unmask it first:

```
# systemctl unmask service_name
```

Procedure

1. Enable a service to start at boot:

```
# systemctl enable service_name
```

Replace *service_name* with the service you want to enable.

You can also enable and start a service in a single command:

```
# systemctl enable --now service_name
```

2. Disable a service to start at boot:

```
# systemctl disable service_name
```

Replace *service_name* with the service you want to disable.

If you want to make a service permanently unusable, mask the service:

```
# systemctl mask service_name
```

5.2. MANAGING SERVICES IN THE RHEL WEB CONSOLE

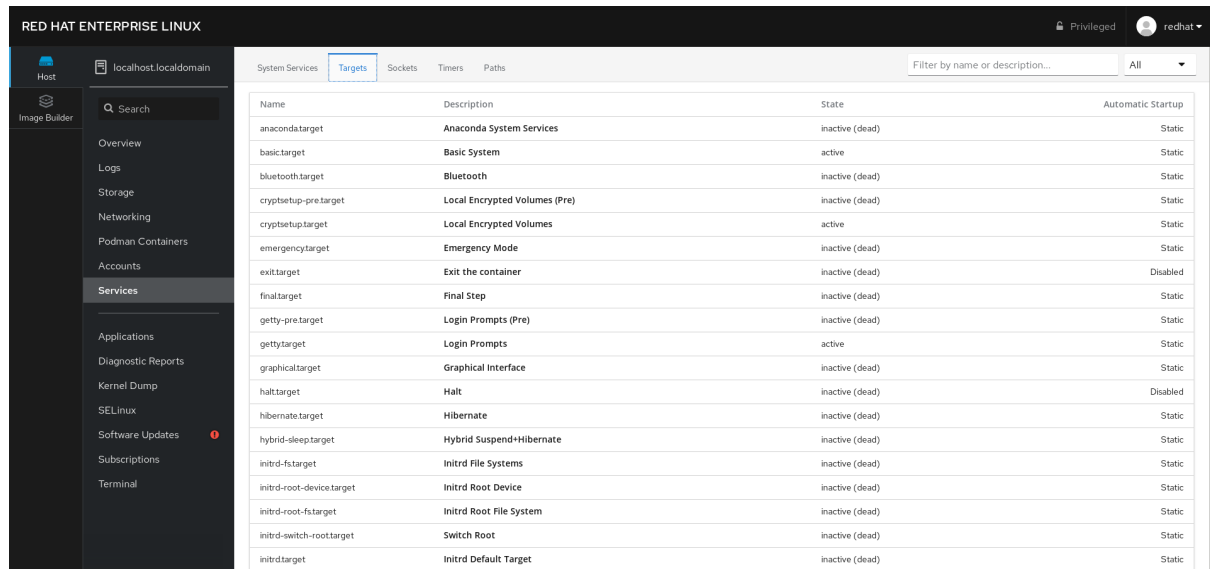
You can enable or disable a service on boot using the RHEL web console. In the web console, you can also check the service status, start or stop services, or mask them.

Prerequisites

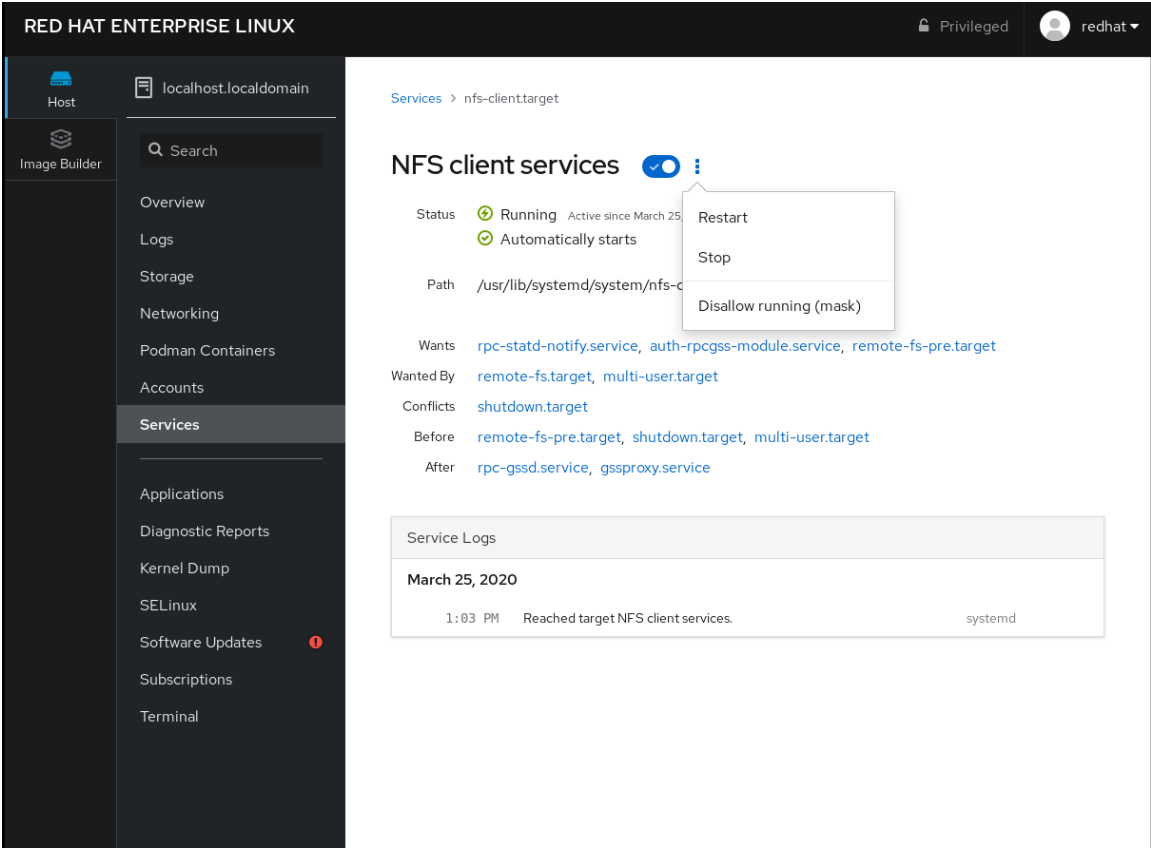
- You must have root access to the system.
- You have installed and enabled the web console.

Procedure

1. Open **localhost:9090** in a web browser of your preference.
2. Log in to the web console with your root credentials on the system.
3. To display the web console panel, click the **Host** icon, which is in the upper-left corner of the window.



4. On the menu, click **Services**.
You can manage systemd targets, services, sockets, timers, and paths.
5. For example, to manage the service **NFS client services**:
 - a. Click **Targets**.
 - b. Select the service **NFS client services**.
 - c. To enable or disable the service, click the **Toogle** button.
 - d. To stop the service, click the **Stop** button and choose the option **Stop**.



CHAPTER 6. CONFIGURING SYSTEM SECURITY

Computer security is the protection of computer systems and their hardware, software, information, and services from theft, damage, disruption, and misdirection. Ensuring computer security is an essential task, in particular in enterprises that process sensitive data and handle business transactions.

This section covers only the basic security features that you can configure after installation of the operating system.

6.1. ENABLING THE FIREWALLD SERVICE

A firewall is a network security system that monitors and controls incoming and outgoing network traffic according to configured security rules. A firewall typically establishes a barrier between a trusted secure internal network and another outside network.

The **firewalld** service, which provides a firewall in Red Hat Enterprise Linux, is automatically enabled during installation.

To enable the **firewalld** service, follow this procedure.

Procedure

- Display the current status of **firewalld**:

```
$ systemctl status firewalld
● firewalld.service - firewalld - dynamic firewall daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/firewalld.service; disabled; vendor preset:
   enabled)
   Active: inactive (dead)
   ...
```

- If **firewalld** is not enabled and running, switch to the **root** user, and start the **firewalld** service and enable to start it automatically after the system restarts:

```
# systemctl enable --now firewalld
```

Verification steps

- Check that **firewalld** is running and enabled:

```
$ systemctl status firewalld
● firewalld.service - firewalld - dynamic firewall daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/firewalld.service; enabled; vendor preset:
   enabled)
   Active: active (running)
   ...
```

Additional resources

- [Using and configuring firewalld](#)
- **man firewalld(1)**

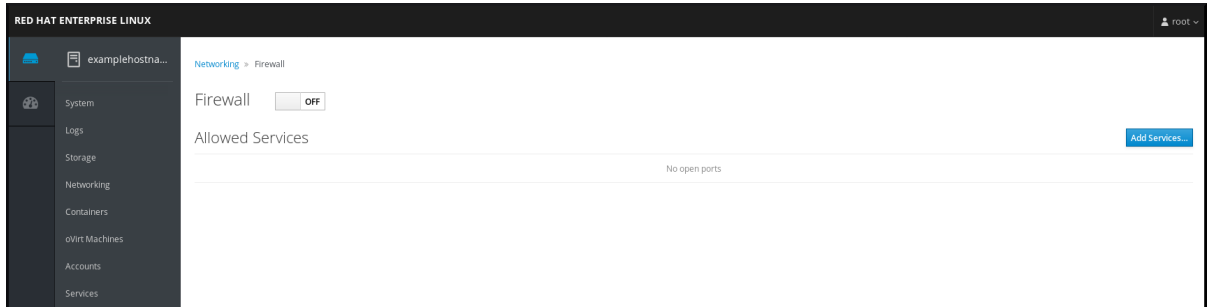
6.2. MANAGING FIREWALL IN THE RHEL 8 WEB CONSOLE

To configure the **firewalld** service in the web console, navigate to **Networking → Firewall**.

By default, the **firewalld** service is enabled.

Procedure

1. To enable or disable **firewalld** in the web console, switch the **Firewall** toggle button.



NOTE

Additionally, you can define more fine-grained access through the firewall to a service using the **Add services...** button.

6.3. MANAGING BASIC SELINUX SETTINGS

Security-Enhanced Linux (SELinux) is an additional layer of system security that determines which processes can access which files, directories, and ports. These permissions are defined in SELinux policies. A policy is a set of rules that guide the SELinux security engine.

SELinux has two possible states:

- Disabled
- Enabled

When SELinux is enabled, it runs in one of the following modes:

- Enabled
 - Enforcing
 - Permissive

In **enforcing mode**, SELinux enforces the loaded policies. SELinux denies access based on SELinux policy rules and enables only the interactions that are explicitly allowed. Enforcing mode is the safest SELinux mode and is the default mode after installation.

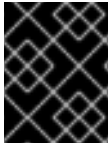
In **permissive mode**, SELinux does not enforce the loaded policies. SELinux does not deny access, but reports actions that break the rules to the **/var/log/audit/audit.log** log. Permissive mode is the default mode during installation. Permissive mode is also useful in some specific cases, for example when troubleshooting problems.

Additional resources

- [Using SELinux](#)

6.4. ENSURING THE REQUIRED STATE OF SELINUX

By default, SELinux operates in enforcing mode. However, in specific scenarios, you can set SELinux to permissive mode or even disable it.



IMPORTANT

Red Hat recommends to keep your system in enforcing mode. For debugging purposes, you can set SELinux to permissive mode.

Follow this procedure to change the state and mode of SELinux on your system.

Procedure

1. Display the current SELinux mode:

```
$ getenforce
```

2. To temporarily set SELinux:

- a. To Enforcing mode:

```
# setenforce Enforcing
```

- b. To Permissive mode:

```
# setenforce Permissive
```



NOTE

After reboot, SELinux mode is set to the value specified in the **/etc/selinux/config** configuration file.

3. To set SELinux mode to persist across reboots, modify the **SELINUX** variable in the **/etc/selinux/config** configuration file.

For example, to switch SELinux to enforcing mode:

```
# This file controls the state of SELinux on the system.
# SELINUX= can take one of these three values:
#   enforcing - SELinux security policy is enforced.
#   permissive - SELinux prints warnings instead of enforcing.
#   disabled - No SELinux policy is loaded.
SELINUX=enforcing
...
```

**WARNING**

Disabling SELinux reduces your system security. Avoid disabling SELinux using the **SELINUX=disabled** option in the `/etc/selinux/config` file because this can result in memory leaks and race conditions causing kernel panics. Instead, disable SELinux by adding the **selinux=0** parameter to the kernel command line. For more information, see [Changing SELinux modes at boot time](#).

Additional resources

- [Changing SELinux states and modes](#)

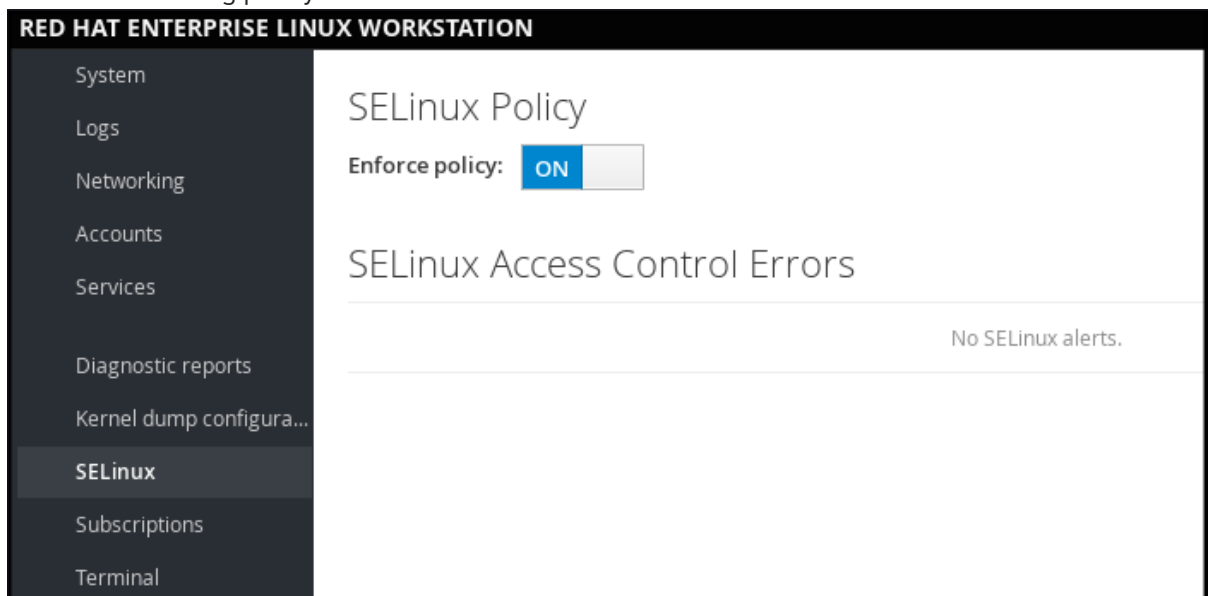
6.5. SWITCHING SELINUX MODES IN THE RHEL 8 WEB CONSOLE

You can set SELinux mode through the RHEL 8 web console in the **SELinux** menu item.

By default, SELinux enforcing policy in the web console is on, and SELinux operates in enforcing mode. By turning it off, you switch SELinux to permissive mode. Note that this selection is automatically reverted on the next boot to the configuration defined in the `/etc/sysconfig/selinux` file.

Procedure

1. In the web console, use the **Enforce policy** toggle button in the SELinux menu item to turn SELinux enforcing policy on or off.

**6.6. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES**

- [Generating SSH key pairs](#)
- [Setting an OpenSSH server for key-based authentication](#)
- [Security hardening](#)

- [Using SELinux](#)
- [Securing networks](#)
- [Deploying the same SELinux configuration on multiple systems](#)

CHAPTER 7. GETTING STARTED WITH MANAGING USER ACCOUNTS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux is a multi-user operating system, which enables multiple users on different computers to access a single system installed on one machine. Every user operates under its own account, and managing user accounts thus represents a core element of Red Hat Enterprise Linux system administration.

The following are the different types of user accounts:

- **Normal user accounts:**

Normal accounts are created for users of a particular system. Such accounts can be added, removed, and modified during normal system administration.

- **System user accounts:**

System user accounts represent a particular applications identifier on a system. Such accounts are generally added or manipulated only at software installation time, and they are not modified later.



WARNING

System accounts are presumed to be available locally on a system. If these accounts are configured and provided remotely, such as in the instance of an LDAP configuration, system breakage and service start failures can occur.

For system accounts, user IDs below 1000 are reserved. For normal accounts, you can use IDs starting at 1000. However, the recommended practice is to assign IDs starting at 5000. For assigning IDs, see the `/etc/login.defs` file.

- **Group:**

A group is an entity which ties together multiple user accounts for a common purpose, such as granting access to particular files.

7.1. MANAGING ACCOUNTS AND GROUPS USING COMMAND LINE TOOLS

This section describes basic command-line tools to manage user accounts and groups.

- To display user and group IDs:

```
$ id
uid=1000(example.user) gid=1000(example.user) groups=1000(example.user),10(wheel)
context=unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023
```

- To create a new user account:

```
# useradd example.user
```

- To assign a new password to a user account belonging to *example.user*:

```
# passwd example.user
```

- To add a user to a group:

```
# usermod -a -G example.group example.user
```

Additional resources

- **man useradd(8)**, **man passwd(1)**, and **man usermod(8)**

7.2. SYSTEM USER ACCOUNTS MANAGED IN THE WEB CONSOLE

With user accounts displayed in the RHEL web console you can:

- Authenticate users when accessing the system.
- Set the access rights to the system.

The RHEL web console displays all user accounts located in the system. Therefore, you can see at least one user account just after the first login to the web console.

After logging into the RHEL web console, you can perform the following operations:

- Create new users accounts.
- Change their parameters.
- Lock accounts.
- Terminate user sessions.

7.3. ADDING NEW ACCOUNTS USING THE WEB CONSOLE

Use the following steps for adding user accounts to the system and setting administration rights to the accounts through the RHEL web console.

Prerequisites

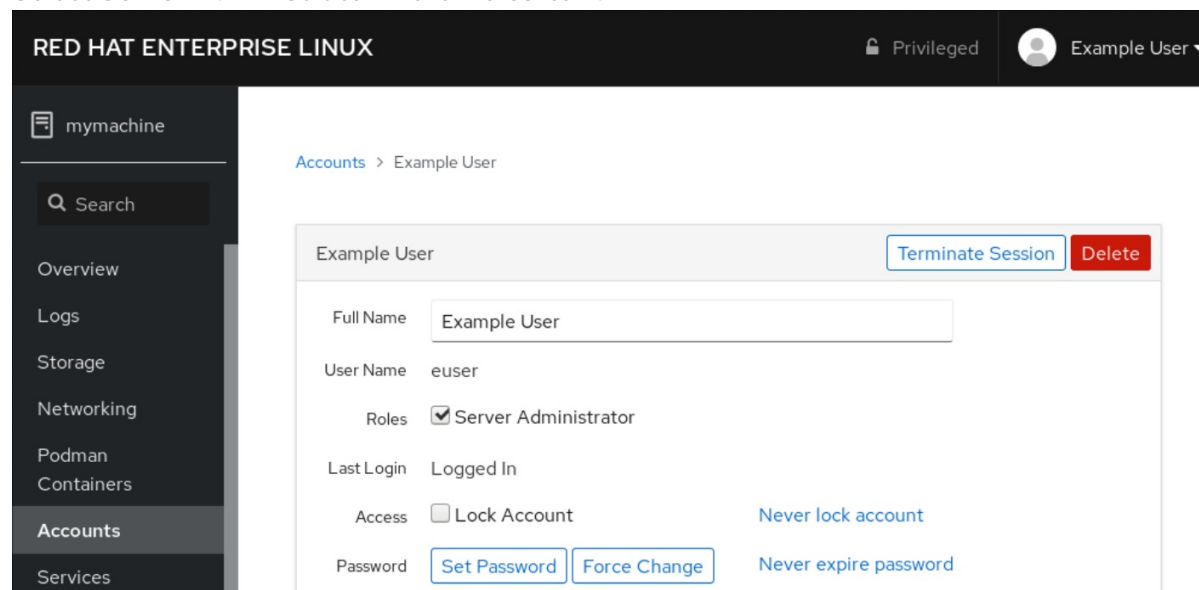
- The RHEL web console must be installed and accessible. For details, see [Installing the web console](#).

Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL web console.
2. Click **Accounts**.
3. Click **Create New Account**.
4. In the **Full Name** field, enter the full name of the user.

The RHEL web console automatically suggests a user name from the full name and fills it in the **User Name** field. If you do not want to use the original naming convention consisting of the first letter of the first name and the whole surname, update the suggestion.

5. In the **Password/Confirm** fields, enter the password and retype it for verification that your password is correct.
The color bar below the fields shows you the security level of the entered password, which does not allow you to create a user with a weak password.
6. Click **Create** to save the settings and close the dialog box.
7. Select the newly created account.
8. Select **Server Administrator** in the **Roles** item.



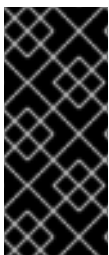
Now you can see the new account in the **Accounts** settings and you can use its credentials to connect to the system.

CHAPTER 8. DUMPING A CRASHED KERNEL FOR LATER ANALYSIS

To analyze why a system crashed, you can use the **kdump** service to save the contents of the system's memory for later analysis. This section provides a brief introduction to **kdump**, and information about configuring **kdump** using the RHEL web console or using the corresponding RHEL system role.

8.1. WHAT IS KDUMP

kdump is a service which provides a crash dumping mechanism. The service enables you to save the contents of the system memory for analysis. **kdump** uses the **kexec** system call to boot into the second kernel (a *capture kernel*) without rebooting; and then captures the contents of the crashed kernel's memory (a *crash dump* or a *vmcore*) and saves it into a file. The second kernel resides in a reserved part of the system memory.



IMPORTANT

A kernel crash dump can be the only information available in the event of a system failure (a critical bug). Therefore, operational **kdump** is important in mission-critical environments. Red Hat advise that system administrators regularly update and test **kexec-tools** in your normal kernel update cycle. This is especially important when new kernel features are implemented.

You can enable **kdump** for all installed kernels on a machine or only for specified kernels. This is useful when there are multiple kernels used on a machine, some of which are stable enough that there is no concern that they could crash.

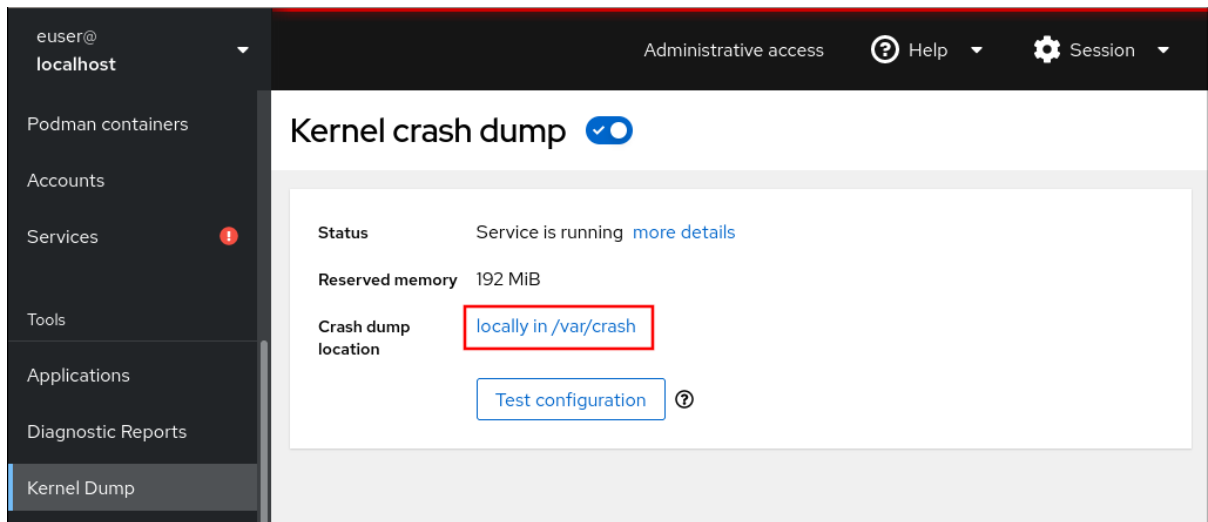
When **kdump** is installed, a default **/etc/kdump.conf** file is created. The file includes the default minimum **kdump** configuration. You can edit this file to customize the **kdump** configuration, but it is not required.

8.2. CONFIGURING KDUMP MEMORY USAGE AND TARGET LOCATION IN WEB CONSOLE

The procedure below shows you how to use the **Kernel Dump** tab in the RHEL web console interface to configure the amount of memory that is reserved for the **kdump** kernel. The procedure also describes how to specify the target location of the **vmcore** dump file and how to test your configuration.

Procedure

1. Open the **Kernel Dump** tab and start the **kdump** service.
2. Configure the **kdump** memory usage using the command line.
3. Click the link next to the **Crash dump location** option.



4. Select the **Local Filesystem** option from the drop-down and specify the directory you want to save the dump in.


- Alternatively, select the **Remote over SSH** option from the drop-down to send the vmcore to a remote machine using the SSH protocol. Fill the **Server**, **ssh key**, and **Directory** fields with the remote machine address, ssh key location, and a target directory.
- Another choice is to select the **Remote over NFS** option from the drop-down and fill the **Mount** field to send the vmcore to a remote machine using the NFS protocol.



NOTE

Tick the **Compression** check box to reduce the size of the vmcore file.

5. Test your configuration by crashing the kernel.

Status	Service is running more details
Reserved memory	192 MiB
Crash dump location	locally in /var/crash
	<div>Test configuration </div>

- Click **Test configuration**.
- In the **Test kdump settings** field, click **Crash system**.

**WARNING**

This step disrupts execution of the kernel and results in a system crash and loss of data.

Additional resources

- [Supported kdump targets](#)
- [Using secure communications between two systems with OpenSSH](#)

8.3. KDUMP USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES

RHEL System Roles is a collection of Ansible roles and modules that provide a consistent configuration interface to remotely manage multiple RHEL systems. The **kdump** role enables you to set basic kernel dump parameters on multiple systems.

**WARNING**

The **kdump** role replaces the **kdump** configuration of the managed hosts entirely by replacing the **/etc/kdump.conf** file. Additionally, if the **kdump** role is applied, all previous **kdump** settings are also replaced, even if they are not specified by the role variables, by replacing the **/etc/sysconfig/kdump** file.

The following example playbook shows how to apply the **kdump** system role to set the location of the crash dump files:

```
---
- hosts: kdump-test
  vars:
    kdump_path: /var/crash
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.kdump
```

For a detailed reference on **kdump** role variables, install the **rhel-system-roles** package, and see the **README.md** or **README.html** files in the `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/kdump` directory.

Additional resources

- [Introduction to RHEL System Roles](#)

8.4. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Installing kdump](#)
- [Configuring kdump on the command line](#)
- [Configuring kdump in the web console](#)

CHAPTER 9. RECOVERING AND RESTORING A SYSTEM

To recover and restore a system using an existing backup, Red Hat Enterprise Linux provides the Relax-and-Recover (ReaR) utility.

You can use the utility as a disaster recovery solution and also for system migration.

The utility enables you to perform the following tasks:

- Produce a bootable image and restore the system from an existing backup, using the image.
- Replicate the original storage layout.
- Restore user and system files.
- Restore the system to a different hardware.

Additionally, for disaster recovery, you can also integrate certain backup software with ReaR.

Setting up ReaR involves the following high-level steps:

1. Install ReaR.
2. Modify ReaR configuration file, to add backup method details.
3. Create rescue system.
4. Generate backup files.

9.1. SETTING UP REAR

Use the following steps to install the package for using the Relax-and-Recover (ReaR) utility, create a rescue system, configure and generate a backup.

Prerequisites

- Necessary configurations as per the backup restore plan are ready.
Note that you can use the **NETFS** backup method, a fully-integrated and built-in method with ReaR.

Procedure

1. Install the ReaR utility by running the following command:

```
# yum install rear
```

2. Modify the ReaR configuration file in an editor of your choice, for example:

```
# vi /etc/rear/local.conf
```

3. Add the backup setting details to **/etc/rear/local.conf**. For example, in the case of the **NETFS** backup method, add the following lines:

```
BACKUP=NETFS
BACKUP_URL=backup.location
```

- Replace *backup.location* by the URL of your backup location.
- 4. To configure ReaR to keep the previous backup archive when the new one is created, also add the following line to the configuration file:

```
NETFS_KEEP_OLD_BACKUP_COPY=y
```

- 5. To make the backups incremental, meaning that only the changed files are backed up on each run, add the following line:

```
BACKUP_TYPE=incremental
```

- 6. Create a rescue system:

```
# rear mkrescue
```

- 7. Take a backup as per the restore plan. For example, in the case of the **NETFS** backup method, run the following command:

```
# rear mkbackuponly
```

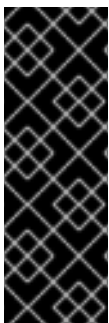
Alternatively, you can create the rescue system and the backup in a single step by running the following command:

```
# rear mkbackup
```

This command combines the functionality of the **rear mkrescue** and **rear mkbackuponly** commands.

9.2. USING A REAR RESCUE IMAGE ON THE 64-BIT IBM Z ARCHITECTURE

Basic Relax and Recover (ReaR) functionality is now available on the 64-bit IBM Z architecture as a Technology Preview. You can create a ReaR rescue image on IBM Z only in the z/VM environment. Backing up and recovering logical partitions (LPARs) has not been tested.



IMPORTANT

ReaR on the 64-bit IBM Z architecture is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process. For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see <https://access.redhat.com/support/offerings/techpreview>.

The only output method currently available is Initial Program Load (IPL). IPL produces a kernel and an initial ramdisk (initrd) that can be used with the **ziPL** bootloader.

Prerequisites

- ReaR is installed.
 - To install ReaR, run the **yum install rear** command

Procedure

Add the following variables to the **/etc/rear/local.conf** to configure ReaR for producing a rescue image on the 64-bit IBM Z architecture:

1. To configure the **IPL** output method, add **OUTPUT=IPL**.
2. To configure the backup method and destination, add **BACKUP** and **BACKUP_URL** variables. For example:

```
BACKUP=NETFS
```

```
BACKUP_URL=nfs://<nfsserver name>/<share path>
```



IMPORTANT

The local backup storage is currently not supported on the 64-bit IBM Z architecture.

3. Optionally, you can also configure the **OUTPUT_URL** variable to save the kernel and **initrd** files. By default, the **OUTPUT_URL** is aligned with **BACKUP_URL**.
4. To perform backup and rescue image creation:

```
rear mkbackup
```

5. This creates the kernel and initrd files at the location specified by the **BACKUP_URL** or **OUTPUT_URL** (if set) variable, and a backup using the specified backup method.
6. To recover the system, use the ReaR kernel and initrd files created in step 3, and boot from a Direct Attached Storage Device (DASD) or a Fibre Channel Protocol (FCP)-attached SCSI device prepared with the **zipl** boot loader, kernel, and **initrd**. For more information, see [Using a Prepared DASD](#).
7. When the rescue kernel and **initrd** get booted, it starts the ReaR rescue environment. Proceed with system recovery.



WARNING

Currently, the rescue process reformats all the DASDs (Direct Attached Storage Devices) connected to the system. Do not attempt a system recovery if there is any valuable data present on the system storage devices. This also includes the device prepared with the zipl bootloader, ReaR kernel, and initrd that were used to boot into the rescue environment. Ensure to keep a copy.

- [Installing under z/VM](#)
- [Using a Prepared DASD](#)

CHAPTER 10. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS USING LOG FILES

Log files contain messages about the system, including the kernel, services, and applications running on it. These contain information that helps troubleshoot issues or monitor system functions. The logging system in Red Hat Enterprise Linux is based on the built-in **syslog** protocol. Particular programs use this system to record events and organize them into log files, which are useful when auditing the operating system and troubleshooting various problems.

10.1. SERVICES HANDLING SYSLOG MESSAGES

The following two services handle **syslog** messages:

- The **systemd-journald** daemon
- The **Rsyslog** service

The **systemd-journald** daemon collects messages from various sources and forwards them to **Rsyslog** for further processing. The **systemd-journald** daemon collects messages from the following sources:

- Kernel
- Early stages of the boot process
- Standard and error output of daemons as they start up and run
- **Syslog**

The **Rsyslog** service sorts the **syslog** messages by type and priority and writes them to the files in the **/var/log** directory. The **/var/log** directory persistently stores the log messages.

10.2. SUBDIRECTORIES STORING SYSLOG MESSAGES

The following subdirectories under the **/var/log** directory store **syslog** messages.

- **/var/log/messages** - all **syslog** messages except the following
- **/var/log/secure** - security and authentication-related messages and errors
- **/var/log/maillog** - mail server-related messages and errors
- **/var/log/cron** - log files related to periodically executed tasks
- **/var/log/boot.log** - log files related to system startup

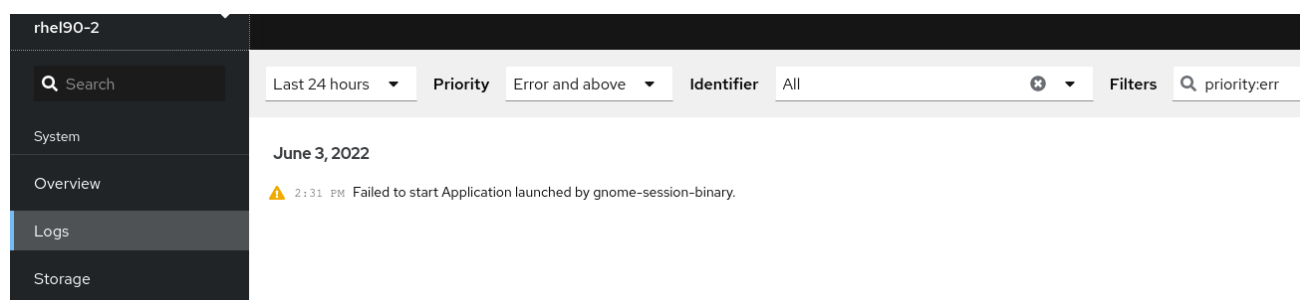
10.3. INSPECTING LOG FILES USING THE WEB CONSOLE

Follow the steps in this procedure to inspect the log files using the RHEL web console.

Procedure

1. Log into the RHEL web console. For details see [Logging in to the web console](#).
2. Click **Logs**.

Figure 10.1. Inspecting the log files in the RHEL 8 web console



10.4. VIEWING LOGS USING THE COMMAND LINE

The Journal is a component of systemd that helps to view and manage log files. It addresses problems connected with traditional logging, closely integrated with the rest of the system, and supports various logging technologies and access management for the log files.

You can use the **journalctl** command to view messages in the system journal using the command line, for example:

```
$ journalctl -b | grep kvm
May 15 11:31:41 localhost.localdomain kernel: kvm-clock: Using msrs 4b564d01 and 4b564d00
May 15 11:31:41 localhost.localdomain kernel: kvm-clock: cpu 0, msr 76401001, primary cpu clock
...
```

Table 10.1. Viewing system information

Command	Description
journalctl	Shows all collected journal entries.
journalctl FILEPATH	Shows logs related to a specific file. For example, the journalctl /dev/sda command displays logs related to the /dev/sda file system.
journalctl -b	Shows logs for the current boot.
journalctl -k -b -1	Shows kernel logs for the current boot.

Table 10.2. Viewing information on specific services

Command	Description
journalctl -b _SYSTEMD_UNIT=foo	Filters log to see ones matching the "foo" systemd service.
journalctl -b _SYSTEMD_UNIT=foo _PID=number	Combines matches. For example, this command shows logs for systemd-units that match foo and the PID number .

Command	Description
<code>journalctl -b _SYSTEMD_UNIT=foo _PID=number + _SYSTEMD_UNIT=foo1</code>	The separator "+" combines two expressions in a logical OR. For example, this command shows all messages from the foo service process with the PID plus all messages from the foo1 service (from any of its processes).
<code>journalctl -b _SYSTEMD_UNIT=foo _SYSTEMD_UNIT=foo1</code>	This command shows all entries matching either expression, referring to the same field. Here, this command shows logs matching a systemd-unit foo or a systemd-unit foo1 .

Table 10.3. Viewing logs related to specific boots

Command	Description
<code>journalctl --list-boots</code>	Shows a tabular list of boot numbers, their IDs, and the timestamps of the first and last message pertaining to the boot. You can use the ID in the next command to view detailed information.
<code>journalctl --boot=ID _SYSTEMD_UNIT=foo</code>	Shows information about the specified boot ID.

10.5. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- `man journalctl(1)`
- [Configuring a remote logging solution](#)

CHAPTER 11. ACCESSING THE RED HAT SUPPORT

This section describes how to effectively troubleshoot your problems using Red Hat support and **sosreport**.

To obtain support from Red Hat, use the [Red Hat Customer Portal](#), which provides access to everything available with your subscription.

11.1. OBTAINING RED HAT SUPPORT THROUGH RED HAT CUSTOMER PORTAL

The following section describes how to use the Red Hat Customer Portal to get help.

Prerequisites

- A valid user account on the Red Hat Customer Portal. See [Create a Red Hat Login](#) .
- An active subscription for the RHEL system.

Procedure

1. Access [Red Hat support](#):
 - a. Open a new support case.
 - b. Initiate a live chat with a Red Hat expert.
 - c. Contact a Red Hat expert by making a call or sending an email.

11.2. TROUBLESHOOTING PROBLEMS USING SOSREPORT

The **sosreport** command collects configuration details, system information and diagnostic information from a Red Hat Enterprise Linux system.

The following section describes how to use the **sosreport** command to produce reports for your support cases.

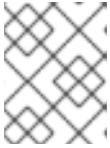
Prerequisites

- A valid user account on the Red Hat Customer Portal. See [Create a Red Hat Login](#) .
- An active subscription for the RHEL system.
- A support-case number.

Procedure

1. Install the **sos** package:

```
# yum install sos
```


**NOTE**

The default minimal installation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux does not include the **sos** package, which provides the **sosreport** command.

2. Generate a report:

```
# sosreport
```

3. Attach the report to your support case.

See the [How can I attach a file to a Red Hat support case?](#) Red Hat Knowledgebase article for more information.

Note that when attaching the report, you are prompted to enter the number of the relevant support case.

Additional resources

- [What is an sosreport and how to create one in Red Hat Enterprise Linux?](#)

CHAPTER 12. MANAGING SOFTWARE PACKAGES

12.1. SOFTWARE MANAGEMENT TOOLS IN RHEL 8

In RHEL 8, software installation is enabled by the new version of the **YUM** tool (**YUM v4**), which is based on the **DNF** technology.



NOTE

Upstream documentation identifies the technology as **DNF** and the tool is referred to as **DNF** in the upstream. As a result, some output returned by the new **YUM** tool in RHEL 8 mentions **DNF**.

Although **YUM v4** used in RHEL 8 is based on **DNF**, it is compatible with **YUM v3** used in RHEL 7. For software installation, the **yum** command and most of its options work the same way in RHEL 8 as they did in RHEL 7.

Selected **yum** plug-ins and utilities have been ported to the new DNF back end, and can be installed under the same names as in RHEL 7. Packages also provide compatibility symlinks, so the binaries, configuration files, and directories can be found in usual locations.

Note that the legacy Python API provided by **YUM v3** is no longer available. You can migrate your plug-ins and scripts to the new API provided by **YUM v4** (DNF Python API), which is stable and fully supported. See [DNF API Reference](#) for more information.

12.2. APPLICATION STREAMS

RHEL 8 introduces the concept of Application Streams. Multiple versions of user space components are now delivered and updated more frequently than the core operating system packages. This provides greater flexibility to customize Red Hat Enterprise Linux without impacting the underlying stability of the platform or specific deployments.

Components made available as Application Streams can be packaged as modules or RPM packages, and are delivered through the AppStream repository in RHEL 8. Each Application Stream has a given life cycle, either the same as RHEL 8 or shorter, more suitable to the particular application. Application Streams with a shorter life cycle are listed in the [Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 Application Streams Life Cycle](#) page.

Modules are collections of packages representing a logical unit: an application, a language stack, a database, or a set of tools. These packages are built, tested, and released together.

Module streams represent versions of the Application Stream components. For example, two streams (versions) of the PostgreSQL database server are available in the postgresql module: PostgreSQL 10 (the default stream) and PostgreSQL 9.6. Only one module stream can be installed on the system. Different versions can be used in separate containers.

Detailed module commands are described in the [Installing, managing, and removing user-space components](#) document. For a list of modules available in AppStream, see the [Package manifest](#).

12.3. SEARCHING FOR SOFTWARE PACKAGES

yum allows you to perform a complete set of operations with software packages.

The following section describes how to use **yum** to:

- Search for packages.
- List packages.
- List repositories.
- Display information about the packages.
- List package groups.
- Specify global expressions in yum input.

12.3.1. Searching packages with YUM

Use the following procedure to find a package providing a particular application or other content.

Procedure

- To search for a package, use:

```
# yum search term
```

Replace *term* with a term related to the package.

Note that **yum search** command returns term matches within the name and summary of the packages. This makes the search faster and enables you to search for packages you do not know the name of, but for which you know a related term.

- To include term matches within package descriptions, use:

```
# yum search --all term
```

Replace *term* with a term you want to search for in a package name, summary, or description.

Note that **yum search --all** enables a more exhaustive but slower search.

12.3.2. Listing packages with YUM

Use the following procedure to list installed and available packages.

Procedure

- To list information on all installed and available packages, use:

```
# yum list --all
```

- To list all packages installed on your system, use:

```
# yum list --installed
```

- To list all packages in all enabled repositories that are available to install, use:

```
# yum list --available
```

Note that you can filter the results by appending global expressions as arguments. See [Specifying global expressions in yum input](#) for more details.

12.3.3. Listing repositories with YUM

Use the following procedure to list enabled and disabled repositories.

Procedure

- To list all enabled repositories on your system, use:

```
# yum repolist
```

- To list all disabled repositories on your system, use:

```
# yum repolist --disabled
```

- To list both enabled and disabled repositories, use:

```
# yum repolist --all
```

- To list additional information about the repositories, use:

```
# yum repoinfo
```

Note that you can filter the results by passing the ID or name of repositories as arguments or by appending global expressions. See [Specifying global expressions in yum input](#) for more details.

12.3.4. Displaying package information with YUM

You can display various types of information about a package using YUM, for example version, release, size, loaded plugins, and more.

Procedure

- To display information about one or more packages, use:

```
# yum info package-name
```

Replace *package-name* with the name of the package.

Note that you can filter the results by appending global expressions as arguments. See [Specifying global expressions in yum input](#) for more details.

12.3.5. Listing package groups with YUM

Use **yum** to view installed package groups and filter the listing results.

Procedure

- To view the number of installed and available groups, use:

```
# yum group summary
```

- To list all installed and available groups, use:

```
# yum group list
```

Note that you can filter the results by appending command line options for the **yum group list** command (**--hidden**, **--available**). For more available options see the man pages.

- To list mandatory and optional packages contained in a particular group, use:

```
# yum group info group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the group.

Note that you can filter the results by appending global expressions as arguments. See [Specifying global expressions in yum input](#) for more details.

12.3.6. Specifying global expressions in YUM input

yum commands allow you to filter the results by appending one or more *glob expressions* as arguments. You have to escape global expressions when passing them as arguments to the **yum** command.

Procedure

To ensure global expressions are passed to **yum** as intended, use one of the following methods:

- Double-quote or single-quote the entire global expression.

```
# yum provides "*/file-name"
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file.

- Escape the wildcard characters by preceding them with a backslash (\) character.

```
# yum provides \*/file-name
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file.

12.4. INSTALLING SOFTWARE PACKAGES

The following section describes how to use **yum** to:

- Install packages.
- Install a package group.
- Specify a package name in yum input.

12.4.1. Installing packages with YUM

- To install a package and all the package dependencies, use:

```
# yum install package-name
```

Replace *package-name* with the name of the package.

- To install multiple packages and their dependencies simultaneously, use:

```
# yum install package-name-1 package-name-2
```

Replace *package-name-1* and *package-name-2* with the names of the packages.

- When installing packages on a *multilib* system (AMD64, Intel 64 machine), you can specify the architecture of the package by appending it to the package name:

```
# yum install package-name.arch
```

Replace *package-name.arch* with the name and architecture of the package.

- If you know the name of the binary you want to install, but not the package name, you can use the path to the binary as an argument:

```
# yum install /usr/sbin/binary-file
```

Replace */usr/sbin/binary-file* with a path to the binary file.

yum searches through the package lists, finds the package which provides */usr/sbin/binary-file*, and prompts you as to whether you want to install it.

- To install a previously-downloaded package from a local directory, use:

```
# yum install /path/
```

Replace */path/* with the path to the package.

Note that you can optimize the package search by explicitly defining how to parse the argument. See [Section 12.4.3, “Specifying a package name in YUM input”](#) for more details.

12.4.2. Installing a package group with YUM

The following procedure describes how to install a package group by a group name or by a groupID using **yum**.

Procedure

- To install a package group by a group name, use:

```
# yum group install group-name
```

Or

```
# yum install @group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the full name of the group or environmental group.

- To install a package group by the groupID, use:

```
# yum group install groupID
```

Replace *groupID* with the ID of the group.

12.4.3. Specifying a package name in YUM input

To optimize the installation and removal process, you can append **-n**, **-na**, or **-nevra** suffixes to **yum install** and **yum remove** commands to explicitly define how to parse an argument:

- To install a package using its exact name, use:

```
# yum install-n name
```

Replace *name* with the exact name of the package.

- To install a package using its exact name and architecture, use:

```
# yum install-na name.architecture
```

Replace *name* and *architecture* with the exact name and architecture of the package.

- To install a package using its exact name, epoch, version, release, and architecture, use:

```
# yum install-nevra name-epoch:version-release.architecture
```

Replace *name*, *epoch*, *version*, *release*, and *architecture* with the exact name, epoch, version, release, and architecture of the package.

12.5. UPDATING SOFTWARE PACKAGES

yum allows you to check if your system has any pending updates. You can list packages that need updating and choose to update a single package, multiple packages, or all packages at once. If any of the packages you choose to update have dependencies, they are updated as well.

The following section describes how to use **yum** to:

- Check for updates.
- Update a single package.
- Update a package group.
- Update all packages and their dependencies.
- Apply security updates.
- Automate software updates.

12.5.1. Checking for updates with YUM

The following procedure describes how to check the available updates for packages installed on your system using **yum**.

Procedure

- To see which packages installed on your system have available updates, use:

■

```
# yum check-update
```

The output returns the list of packages and their dependencies that have an update available.

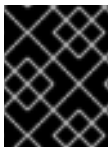
12.5.2. Updating a single package with YUM

Use the following procedure to update a single package and its dependencies using **yum**.

- To update a package, use:

```
# yum update package-name
```

Replace *package-name* with the name of the package.



IMPORTANT

When applying updates to kernel, **yum** always **installs** a new kernel regardless of whether you are using the **yum update** or **yum install** command.

12.5.3. Updating a package group with YUM

Use the following procedure to update a group of packages and their dependencies using **yum**.

Procedure

- To update a package group, use:

```
# yum group update group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the package group.

12.5.4. Updating all packages and their dependencies with YUM

Use the following procedure to update all packages and their dependencies using **yum**.

Procedure

- To update all packages and their dependencies, use:

```
# yum update
```

12.5.5. Updating security-related packages with YUM

Use the following procedure to update packages available packages that have security errata using **yum**.

Procedure

- To upgrade to the latest available packages that have security errata, use:

```
# yum update --security
```

- To upgrade to the last security errata packages, use:


```
# yum update-minimal --security
```

12.5.6. Automating software updates

To check and download package updates automatically and regularly, you can use the **DNF Automatic** tool that is provided by the **dnf-automatic** package.

DNF Automatic is an alternative command-line interface to **yum** that is suited for automatic and regular execution using systemd timers, cron jobs and other such tools.

DNF Automatic synchronizes package metadata as needed and then checks for updates available. After, the tool can perform one of the following actions depending on how you configure it:

- Exit
- Download updated packages
- Download and apply the updates

The outcome of the operation is then reported by a selected mechanism, such as the standard output or email.

12.5.6.1. Installing DNF Automatic

The following procedure describes how to install the **DNF Automatic** tool.

Procedure

- To install the **dnf-automatic** package, use:

```
# yum install dnf-automatic
```

Verification steps

- To verify the successful installation, confirm the presence of the **dnf-automatic** package by running the following command:

```
# rpm -qi dnf-automatic
```

12.5.6.2. DNF Automatic configuration file

By default, **DNF Automatic** uses **/etc/dnf/automatic.conf** as its configuration file to define its behavior.

The configuration file is separated into the following topical sections:

- **[commands]** section
Sets the mode of operation of **DNF Automatic**.
- **[emitters]** section
Defines how the results of **DNF Automatic** are reported.
- **[command_email]** section
Provides the email emitter configuration for an external command used to send email.

- **[email]** section
Provides the email emitter configuration.
- **[base]** section
Overrides settings from the main configuration file of yum.

With the default settings of the `/etc/dnf/automatic.conf` file, **DNF Automatic** checks for available updates, downloads them, and reports the results as standard output.



WARNING

Settings of the operation mode from the **[commands]** section are overridden by settings used by a systemd timer unit for all timer units except **dnf-automatic.timer**.

Additional resources

- For more details on particular sections, see [DNF Automatic documentation](#).
- For more details on systemd timer units, see the **man dnf-automatic** manual pages.
- For the overview of the systemd timer units included in the **dnf-automatic package**, see Section [Overview of the systemd timer units included in the dnf-automatic package](#) [Overview of the systemd timer units included in the dnf-automatic package](#)

12.5.6.3. Enabling DNF Automatic

To run **DNF Automatic**, you always need to enable and start a specific systemd timer unit. You can use one of the timer units provided in the **dnf-automatic** package, or you can write your own timer unit depending on your needs.

The following section describes how to enable **DNF Automatic**.

Prerequisites

- You specified the behavior of DNF Automatic by modifying the `/etc/dnf/automatic.conf` configuration file.

For more information on **DNF Automatic** configuration file, see Section 2.5.6.2, “DNF Automatic configuration file”.

Procedure

- Select, enable and start a systemd timer unit that fits your needs:

```
# systemctl enable --now <unit>
```

where **<unit>** is one of the following timers:

- **dnf-automatic-download.timer**

- **dnf-automatic-install.timer**
- **dnf-automatic-notifyonly.timer**
- **dnf-automatic.timer**

For **downloading** available updates, use:

```
# systemctl enable dnf-automatic-download.timer
```

```
# systemctl start dnf-automatic-download.timer
```

For **downloading and installing** available updates, use:

```
# systemctl enable dnf-automatic-install.timer
```

```
# systemctl start dnf-automatic-install.timer
```

For **reporting** about available updates, use:

```
# systemctl enable dnf-automatic-notifyonly.timer
```

```
# systemctl start dnf-automatic-notifyonly.timer
```

Optionally, you can use:

```
# systemctl enable dnf-automatic.timer
```

```
# systemctl start dnf-automatic.timer
```

In terms of downloading and applying updates, this timer unit behaves according to settings in the **/etc/dnf/automatic.conf** configuration file. The default behavior is similar to **dnf-automatic-download.timer**: it downloads the updated packages, but it does not install them.



NOTE

Alternatively, you can also run **DNF Automatic** by executing the **/usr/bin/dnf-automatic** file directly from the command line or from a custom script.

Verification steps

- To verify that the timer is enabled, run the following command:

```
# systemctl status <systemd timer unit>
```

Additional resources

- For more information on the dnf-automatic timers, see the **man dnf-automatic** manual pages.
- For the overview of the systemd timer units included in the **dnf-automatic** package, see [Section Overview of the systemd timer units included in the dnf-automatic package](#)

12.5.6.4. Overview of the systemd timer units included in the dnf-automatic package

The systemd timer units take precedence and override the settings in the **/etc/dnf/automatic.conf** configuration file concerning downloading and applying updates.

For example if you set the following option in the **/etc/dnf/automatic.conf** configuration file, but you have activated the **dnf-automatic-notifyonly.timer** unit, the packages will not be downloaded:

```
download_updates = yes
```

The **dnf-automatic** package includes the following systemd timer units:

Timer unit	Function	Overrides settings in the /etc/dnf/automatic.conf file?
dnf-automatic-download.timer	Downloads packages to cache and makes them available for updating. Note: This timer unit does not install the updated packages. To perform the installation, you have to execute the dnf update command.	Yes
dnf-automatic-install.timer	Downloads and installs updated packages.	Yes
dnf-automatic-notifyonly.timer	Downloads only repository data to keep repository cache up-to-date and notifies you about available updates. Note: This timer unit does not download or install the updated packages	Yes
dnf-automatic.timer	The behavior of this timer concerning downloading and applying updates is specified by the settings in the /etc/dnf/automatic.conf configuration file. Default behavior is the same as for the dnf-automatic-download.timer unit: it only downloads packages, but does not install them.	No

Additional resources

- For more information on the **dnf-automatic** timers, see the **man dnf-automatic** manual pages.

- For more information on the `/etc/dnf/automatic.conf` configuration file, see Section [DNF Automatic configuration file](#)

12.6. UNINSTALLING SOFTWARE PACKAGES

The following section describes how to use **yum** to:

- Remove packages.
- Remove a package group.
- Specify a package name in yum input.

12.6.1. Removing packages with YUM

Use the following procedure to remove a package either by the group name or the groupID.

Procedure

- To remove a particular package and all dependent packages, use:

```
# yum remove package-name
```

Replace *package-name* with the name of the package.

- To remove multiple packages and their dependencies simultaneously, use:

```
# yum remove package-name-1 package-name-2
```

Replace *package-name-1* and *package-name-2* with the names of the packages.



NOTE

yum is not able to remove a package without removing depending packages.

Note that you can optimize the package search by explicitly defining how to parse the argument. See [Specifying a package name in yum input](#) for more details.

12.6.2. Removing a package group with YUM

Use the following procedure to remove a package either by the group name or the groupID.

Procedure

- To remove a package group by the group name, use:

```
# yum group remove group-name
```

Or

```
# yum remove @group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the full name of the group.

- To remove a package group by the groupID, use:

```
# yum group remove groupID
```

Replace *groupID* with the ID of the group.

12.6.3. Specifying a package name in YUM input

To optimize the installation and removal process, you can append **-n**, **-na**, or **-nevra** suffixes to **yum install** and **yum remove** commands to explicitly define how to parse an argument:

- To install a package using its exact name, use:

```
# yum install-n name
```

Replace *name* with the exact name of the package.

- To install a package using its exact name and architecture, use:

```
# yum install-na name.architecture
```

Replace *name* and *architecture* with the exact name and architecture of the package.

- To install a package using its exact name, epoch, version, release, and architecture, use:

```
# yum install-nevra name-epoch:version-release.architecture
```

Replace *name*, *epoch*, *version*, *release*, and *architecture* with the exact name, epoch, version, release, and architecture of the package.

12.7. MANAGING SOFTWARE PACKAGE GROUPS

A package group is a collection of packages that serve a common purpose (**System Tools**, **Sound and Video**). Installing a package group pulls a set of dependent packages, which saves time considerably.

The following section describes how to use **yum** to:

- List package groups.
- Install a package group.
- Remove a package group.
- Specify global expressions in yum input.

12.7.1. Listing package groups with YUM

Use **yum** to view installed package groups and filter the listing results.

Procedure

- To view the number of installed and available groups, use:

```
# yum group summary
```

- To list all installed and available groups, use:

```
# yum group list
```

Note that you can filter the results by appending command line options for the **yum group list** command (**--hidden**, **--available**). For more available options see the man pages.

- To list mandatory and optional packages contained in a particular group, use:

```
# yum group info group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the group.

Note that you can filter the results by appending global expressions as arguments. See [Specifying global expressions in yum input](#) for more details.

12.7.2. Installing a package group with YUM

The following procedure describes how to install a package group by a group name or by a groupID using **yum**.

Procedure

- To install a package group by a group name, use:

```
# yum group install group-name
```

Or

```
# yum install @group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the full name of the group or environmental group.

- To install a package group by the groupID, use:

```
# yum group install groupID
```

Replace *groupID* with the ID of the group.

12.7.3. Removing a package group with YUM

Use the following procedure to remove a package either by the group name or the groupID.

Procedure

- To remove a package group by the group name, use:

```
# yum group remove group-name
```

Or

```
# yum remove @group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the full name of the group.

- To remove a package group by the groupID, use:

```
# yum group remove groupID
```

Replace *groupID* with the ID of the group.

12.7.4. Specifying global expressions in YUM input

yum commands allow you to filter the results by appending one or more *glob expressions* as arguments. You have to escape global expressions when passing them as arguments to the **yum** command.

Procedure

To ensure global expressions are passed to **yum** as intended, use one of the following methods:

- Double-quote or single-quote the entire global expression.

```
# yum provides "*/file-name"
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file.

- Escape the wildcard characters by preceding them with a backslash (\) character.

```
# yum provides \*/file-name
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file.

12.8. HANDLING PACKAGE MANAGEMENT HISTORY

The **yum history** command allows you to review information about the timeline of **yum** transactions, dates and times they occurred, the number of packages affected, whether these transactions succeeded or were aborted, and if the RPM database was changed between transactions. **yum history** command can also be used to undo or redo the transactions.

The following section describes how to use **yum** to:

- List transactions.
- Revert transactions.
- Repeat transactions.
- Specify global expressions in yum input.

12.8.1. Listing transactions with YUM

Use the following procedure to list the latest transactions, the latest operations for a selected package, and details of a particular transaction.

Procedure

- To display a list of all the latest **yum** transactions, use:


```
# yum history
```

- To display a list of all the latest operations for a selected package, use:

```
# yum history list package-name
```

Replace *package-name* with the name of the package. You can filter the command output by appending global expressions. See [Specifying global expressions in yum input](#) for more details.

- To examine a particular transaction, use:

```
# yum history info transactionID
```

Replace *transactionID* with the ID of the transaction.

12.8.2. Reverting transactions with YUM

The following procedure describes how to revert a selected transaction or the last transaction using **yum**.

Procedure

- To revert a particular transaction, use:

```
# yum history undo transactionID
```

Replace *transactionID* with the ID of the transaction.

- To revert the last transaction, use:

```
# yum history undo last
```

Note that the **yum history undo** command only reverts the steps that were performed during the transaction. If the transaction installed a new package, the **yum history undo** command uninstalls it. If the transaction uninstalled a package, the **yum history undo** command reinstalls it. **yum history undo** also attempts to downgrade all updated packages to their previous versions, if the older packages are still available.

12.8.3. Repeating transactions with YUM

Use the following procedure to repeat a selected transaction or the last transaction using **yum**.

Procedure

- To repeat a particular transaction, use:

```
# yum history redo transactionID
```

Replace *transactionID* with the ID of the transaction.

- To repeat the last transaction, use:

```
# yum history redo last
```

Note that the **yum history redo** command only repeats the steps that were performed during the transaction.

12.8.4. Specifying global expressions in YUM input

yum commands allow you to filter the results by appending one or more *glob expressions* as arguments. You have to escape global expressions when passing them as arguments to the **yum** command.

Procedure

To ensure global expressions are passed to **yum** as intended, use one of the following methods:

- Double-quote or single-quote the entire global expression.

```
# yum provides "*/file-name"
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file.

- Escape the wildcard characters by preceding them with a backslash (\) character.

```
# yum provides \*/file-name
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file.

12.9. MANAGING SOFTWARE REPOSITORIES

The configuration information for **yum** and related utilities are stored in the **/etc/yum.conf** file. This file contains one or more **[repository]** sections, which allow you to set repository-specific options.

It is recommended to define individual repositories in new or existing **.repo** files in the **/etc/yum.repos.d/** directory.

Note that the values you define in individual **[repository]** sections of the **/etc/yum.conf** file override values set in the **[main]** section.

The following section describes how to:

- Set **[repository]** options.
- Add a **yum** repository.
- Enable a **yum** repository.
- Disable a **yum** repository.

12.9.1. Setting YUM repository options

The **/etc/yum.conf** configuration file contains the **[repository]** sections, where *repository* is a unique repository ID. The **[repository]** sections allows you to define individual **yum** repositories.



NOTE

Do not give custom repositories names used by the Red Hat repositories to avoid conflicts.

For a complete list of available **[repository]** options, see the **[repository] OPTIONS** section of the **yum.conf(5)** manual page.

12.9.2. Adding a YUM repository

Procedure

To define a new repository, you can:

- Add a **[repository]** section to the **/etc/yum.conf** file.
- Add a **[repository]** section to a **.repo** file in the **/etc/yum.repos.d/** directory.
+

yum repositories commonly provide their own **.repo** file.



NOTE

It is recommended to define your repositories in a **.repo** file instead of **/etc/yum.conf** as all files with the **.repo** file extension in this directory are read by **yum**.

- To add a repository to your system and enable it, use:

```
# yum-config-manager --add-repo repository_URL
```

Replace *repository_url* with URL pointing to the repository.



WARNING

Obtaining and installing software packages from unverified or untrusted sources other than Red Hat certificate-based **Content Delivery Network (CDN)** constitutes a potential security risk, and could lead to security, stability, compatibility, and maintainability issues.

12.9.3. Enabling a YUM repository

Once you added a ``yum`` repository to your system, enable it to ensure installation and updates.

Procedure

- To enable a repository, use:

```
# yum-config-manager --enable repositoryID
```

Replace *repositoryID* with the unique repository ID.

To list available repository IDs, see [Listing packages with yum](#).

12.9.4. Disabling a YUM repository

Disable a specific YUM repository to prevent particular packages from installation or update.

Procedure

- To disable a yum repository, use:

```
# yum-config-manager --disable repositoryID
```

Replace *repositoryID* with the unique repository ID.

To list available repository IDs, see [Listing packages with yum](#).

12.10. CONFIGURING YUM

The configuration information for **yum** and related utilities are stored in the **/etc/yum.conf** file. This file contains one mandatory **[main]** section, which enables you to set **yum** options that have global effect.

The following section describes how to:

- View the current **yum** configurations.
- Set **yum** [main] options.
- Use **yum** plug-ins.

12.10.1. Viewing the current YUM configurations

Use the following procedure to view the current **yum** configurations.

Procedure

- To display the current values of global yum options specified in the **[main]** section of the **/etc/yum.conf** file, use:

```
# yum config-manager --dump
```

12.10.2. Setting YUM main options

The **/etc/yum.conf** configuration file contains one **[main]** section. The key-value pairs in this section affect how **yum** operates and treats repositories.

You can add additional options under the **[main]** section heading in **/etc/yum.conf**.

For a complete list of available **[main]** options, see the **[main] OPTIONS** section of the **yum.conf(5)** manual page.

12.10.3. Using YUM plug-ins

yum provides plug-ins that extend and enhance its operations. Certain plug-ins are installed by default.

The following section describes how to enable, configure, and disable **yum** plug-ins.

12.10.3.1. Managing YUM plug-ins

Procedure

The plug-in configuration files always contain a **[main]** section where the **enabled=** option controls whether the plug-in is enabled when you run **yum** commands. If this option is missing, you can add it manually to the file.

Every installed plug-in has its own configuration file in the **/etc/dnf/plugins/** directory. You can enable or disable plug-in specific options in these files.

12.10.3.2. Enabling YUM plug-ins

The following procedure describes how to disable or enable all **YUM** plug-ins, disable all plug-ins for a particular command, or certain **YUM** plug-ins for a single command.

+

Procedure

- To enable all yum plug-ins:
 1. Ensure a line beginning with **plugins=** is present in the **[main]** section of the **/etc/yum.conf** file.
 2. Set the value of **plugins=** to **1**.

```
plugins=1
```

12.10.3.3. Disabling YUM plug-ins

- To disable all yum plug-ins:
 1. Ensure a line beginning with **plugins=** is present in the **[main]** section of the **/etc/yum.conf** file.
 2. Set the value of **plugins=** to **0**.

```
plugins=0
```



IMPORTANT

Disabling all plug-ins is **not** advised. Certain plug-ins provide important yum services. In particular, the **product-id** and **subscription-manager** plug-ins provide support for the certificate-based **Content Delivery Network (CDN)**. Disabling plug-ins globally is provided as a convenience option, and is advisable only when diagnosing a potential problem with **yum**.

- To disable all yum plug-ins for a particular command, append **--noplugins** option to the command.

```
# yum --noplugins update
```

- To disable certain yum plug-ins for a single command, append **--disableplugin=*plugin-name*** option to the command.

```
# yum update --disableplugin=plugin-name
```

Replace *plugin-name* with the name of the plug-in.

CHAPTER 13. INTRODUCTION TO SYSTEMD

As a system administrator, you need to interact with **systemd**, the system and service manager for Linux operating systems. The **systemd** software suite provides tools and services to control and report the state of the system, to initialize your system during start and many more. Since Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, **systemd** is a replacement for Upstart as the default init system, and is backwards compatible with SysV init scripts. The **systemd** software suite provides a number of features such as:

- parallel start of system services at boot time,
- on-demand activation of daemons,
- dependency-based service control logic.

As a representation of system resources and services, **systemd** introduces the concept of *systemd units*. A systemd unit, which performs or controls a particular task, is the basic object that systemd manages. See the following examples of various systemd unit types:

- service,
- target,
- device,
- mount,
- timer,
- other types that are relevant to the init system.



NOTE

If you want to display all available unit types, use:

```
# systemctl -t help
```

A systemd unit consists of a name, type and a configuration file, which defines the task of the unit. The unit configuration files are located in one of the directories listed in the following table:

Table 13.1. systemd unit files locations

Directory	Description
/usr/lib/systemd/system/	systemd unit files distributed with installed RPM packages.
/run/systemd/system/	systemd unit files created at run time. This directory takes precedence over the directory with installed service unit files.

Directory	Description
/etc/systemd/system/	systemd unit files created by systemctl enable as well as unit files added for extending a service. This directory takes precedence over the directory with runtime unit files.

The default configuration of **systemd** is defined during the compilation and you can find the configuration in the **/etc/systemd/system.conf** file. Use this file if you want to deviate from those defaults and override selected default values for systemd units globally.

For example, to override the default value of the timeout limit, which is set to 90 seconds, use the **DefaultTimeoutStartSec** parameter to input the required value in seconds.

DefaultTimeoutStartSec=required value

13.1. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Migration Planning Guide](#) for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7

CHAPTER 14. MANAGING SYSTEM SERVICES WITH SYSTEMCTL

As a system administrator, you want to manage system services and perform different tasks related to different services, such as starting, stopping, restarting, enabling, and disabling services, listing services, and displaying system services statuses. To interact with the **systemd** system and service manager, use the **systemctl** utility.

14.1. LISTING SYSTEM SERVICES

You can list all currently loaded service units and the status of all available service units.

Procedure

- To list all currently loaded service units, enter:

```
$ systemctl list-units --type service
UNIT                                LOAD  ACTIVE SUB    DESCRIPTION
abrt-ccpp.service                  loaded active exited Install ABRT coredump hook
abrt-oops.service                  loaded active running ABRT kernel log watcher
abrt-d.service                     loaded active running ABRT Automated Bug Reporting Tool
----
systemd-vconsole-setup.service     loaded active exited Setup Virtual Console
tog-pegasus.service                loaded active running OpenPegasus CIM Server

LOAD   = Reflects whether the unit definition was properly loaded.
ACTIVE = The high-level unit activation state, i.e. generalization of SUB.
SUB     = The low-level unit activation state, values depend on unit type.

46 loaded units listed. Pass --all to see loaded but inactive units, too.
To show all installed unit files use 'systemctl list-unit-files'
```

By default, the **systemctl list-units** command displays only active units. For each service unit file, the command displays:

- **UNIT**: its full name
- **LOAD**: information whether the unit file has been loaded
- **ACTIVE** or **SUB**: its high-level and low-level unit file activation state
- **DESCRIPTION**: a short description
- To list **all loaded units regardless of their state** enter the following command with the **--all** or **-a** command line option:

```
$ systemctl list-units --type service --all
```

- To list the status (**enabled** or **disabled**) of all available service units, enter:

```
$ systemctl list-unit-files --type service
UNIT FILE          STATE
abrt-ccpp.service  enabled
abrt-oops.service  enabled
```

```
abrt.service          enabled
...
wpa_supplicant.service disabled
ypbind.service        disabled

208 unit files listed.
```

For each service unit, this command displays:

- **UNIT FILE:** its full name
- **STATE:** information whether the service unit is enabled or disabled

Additional resources

- [Displaying system service status](#)

14.2. DISPLAYING SYSTEM SERVICE STATUS

You can inspect any service unit to get its detailed information and verify the state of the service, whether it is enabled or running. You can also view services that are ordered to start after or before a particular service unit.

Procedure

- To display detailed information about a service unit that corresponds to a system service, enter:

```
$ systemctl status <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service unit you want to inspect (for example, **gdm**).

This command displays the name of the selected service unit followed by its short description, one or more fields described in [Available service unit information](#), if it is executed by the **root** user, and the most recent log entries.

Table 14.1. Available service unit information

Field	Description
Loaded	Information whether the service unit has been loaded, the absolute path to the unit file, and a note whether the unit is enabled.
Active	Information whether the service unit is running followed by a time stamp.
Main PID	The PID of the corresponding system service followed by its name.
Status	Additional information about the corresponding system service.

Field	Description
Process	Additional information about related processes.
CGroup	Additional information about related Control Groups (cgroups).

Example 14.1. Displaying service status

The service unit for the GNOME Display Manager is named **gdm.service**. To determine the current status of this service unit, type the following at a shell prompt:

```
# systemctl status gdm.service
gdm.service - GNOME Display Manager
  Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/gdm.service; enabled)
  Active: active (running) since Thu 2013-10-17 17:31:23 CEST; 5min ago
  Main PID: 1029 (gdm)
  CGroup: /system.slice/gdm.service
          └─1029 /usr/sbin/gdm
             └─1037 /usr/libexec/gdm-simple-slave --display-id /org/gno...
                └─1047 /usr/bin/Xorg :0 -background none -verbose -auth /r...

Oct 17 17:31:23 localhost systemd[1]: Started GNOME Display Manager.
```

- To only verify that a particular service unit is running, enter:

```
$ systemctl is-active <name>.service
```

- To determine whether a particular service unit is enabled, enter:

```
$ systemctl is-enabled <name>.service
```



NOTE

Both **systemctl is-active** and **systemctl is-enabled** return an exit status of **0** if the specified service unit is running or enabled.

- To determine what services are ordered to start before the specified service unit, enter:

```
# systemctl list-dependencies --after <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service in the command.

For example, to view the list of services ordered to start before **gdm**, enter:

```
# systemctl list-dependencies --after gdm.service
gdm.service
└─dbus.socket
└─getty@tty1.service
```

```
├─livesys.service
├─plymouth-quit.service
├─system.slice
├─systemd-journald.socket
├─systemd-user-sessions.service
└─basic.target
[output truncated]
```

- To determine what services are ordered to start after the specified service unit, enter:

```
# systemctl list-dependencies --before <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service in the command.

For example, to view the list of services ordered to start after **gdm**, enter:

```
# systemctl list-dependencies --before gdm.service
gdm.service
├─dracut-shutdown.service
├─graphical.target
│   └─systemd-readahead-done.service
│       └─systemd-readahead-done.timer
│           └─systemd-update-utmp-runlevel.service
└─shutdown.target
    └─systemd-reboot.service
        └─final.target
            └─systemd-reboot.service
```

Additional resources

- [Listing system services](#)

14.3. STARTING A SYSTEM SERVICE

You can start system service in the current session using the **start** command.

Prerequisites

- You must have root access to the system.

Procedure

- To start a selected service unit corresponding to a system service, type the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl start <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service unit you want to start (for example, **httpd.service**).

Example 14.2. Starting httpd.service

The service unit for the Apache HTTP Server is named **httpd.service**. To activate this service unit and start the **httpd** daemon in the current session, enter the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl start httpd.service
```

NOTE

In **systemd**, positive and negative dependencies between services exist. Starting a particular service may require starting one or more other services (**positive dependency**) or stopping one or more services (**negative dependency**).

When you attempt to start a new service, **systemd** resolves all dependencies automatically, without explicit notification to the user. This means that if you are already running a service, and you attempt to start another service with a negative dependency, the first service is automatically stopped.

For example, if you are running the **postfix** service, and you attempt to start the **sendmail** service, **systemd** first automatically stops **postfix**, because these two services are conflicting and cannot run on the same port.

Additional resources

- [Positive and negative service dependencies](#)
- [Enabling a system service](#)
- [Displaying system service status](#)

14.4. STOPPING A SYSTEM SERVICE

If you want to stop a system service in the current session, use the **stop** command.

Prerequisites

- You must have root access to the system.

Procedure

- To stop the service unit corresponding to a system service, enter the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl stop <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service unit you want to stop (for example, **bluetooth**).

Example 14.3. Stopping bluetoothd.service

The service unit for the **bluetoothd** daemon is named **bluetooth.service**. To deactivate this service unit and stop the **bluetoothd** daemon in the current session, enter the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl stop bluetooth.service
```



Additional resources

- [Disabling a system service](#)
- [Displaying system service status](#)

14.5. RESTARTING A SYSTEM SERVICE

You can restart system service in the current session using the **restart** command.

This procedure describes how to:

- Stop the selected service unit in the current session and immediately start it again
- Restart a service unit only if the corresponding service is already running
- Reload configuration of a system service without interrupting its execution

Prerequisites

- You must have root access to the system.

Procedure

- Restart a service unit corresponding to a system service:

```
# systemctl restart <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service unit you want to restart (for example, **httpd**).



NOTE

If the selected service unit is not running, this command starts it too.

- Alternatively, restart a service unit only if the corresponding service is already running:

```
# systemctl try-restart <name>.service
```

- Alternatively, reload the configuration without interrupting service execution:

```
# systemctl reload <name>.service
```



NOTE

System services that do not support this feature, ignore this command. To restart such services, use the **reload-or-restart** and **reload-or-try-restart** commands instead.

Example 14.4. Reloading httpd.service

In order to prevent users from encountering unnecessary error messages or partially

rendered web pages, the Apache HTTP Server allows you to edit and reload its configuration without the need to restart it and interrupt actively processed requests. To do so, use the following command:

```
# systemctl reload httpd.service
```

Additional resources

- [Displaying system service status](#)

14.6. ENABLING A SYSTEM SERVICE

You can configure service to start automatically at the system booting time. The **enable** command reads the **[Install]** section of the selected service unit and creates appropriate symbolic links to the **/usr/lib/systemd/system/*name.service*** file in the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory and its sub-directories. However, it does not rewrite links that already exist.

Prerequisites

- You must have root access to the system.

Procedure

- Configure a service unit that corresponds to a system service to be automatically started at boot time:

```
# systemctl enable <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service unit you want to enable (for example, **httpd**).

- Alternatively, if you want to ensure that the symbolic links are re-created, reenable the system unit:

```
# systemctl reenable <name>.service
```

This command disables the selected service unit and immediately enables it again.

Example 14.5. Enabling httpd.service

To configure the Apache HTTP Server to start automatically at boot time, use the following command:

```
# systemctl enable httpd.service
Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/multi-user.target.wants/httpd.service to
/usr/lib/systemd/system/httpd.service.
```

Additional resources

- [Displaying system service status](#)

- [Starting a system service](#)

14.7. DISABLING A SYSTEM SERVICE

You can prevent a service unit from starting automatically at boot time. The **disable** command reads the **[Install]** section of the selected service unit and removes appropriate symbolic links to the **/usr/lib/systemd/system/*name.service*** file from the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory and its sub-directories.

Prerequisites

- You must have root access to the system.

Procedure

- To configure a service unit that corresponds to a system service not to start automatically at boot time, enter the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl disable <name>.service
```

Replace *<name>* with the name of the service unit you want to disable (for example, **bluetooth**).

Example 14.6. Disabling bluetoothd.service

The service unit for the **bluetoothd** daemon is named **bluetooth.service**. To prevent this service unit from starting at boot time, enter the following command as a **root**:

```
# systemctl disable bluetooth.service
Removed symlink /etc/systemd/system/bluetooth.target.wants/bluetooth.service.
Removed symlink /etc/systemd/system/dbus-org.bluez.service.
```

- Alternatively, you can mask any service unit and prevent it from being started manually or by another service:

```
# systemctl mask <name>.service
```

This command replaces the **/etc/systemd/system/*name.service*** file with a symbolic link to **/dev/null**, rendering the actual unit file inaccessible to **systemd**.

- To revert this action and unmask a service unit, enter:

```
# systemctl unmask <name>.service
```

Additional resources

- [Displaying system service status](#)
- [Stopping a system service](#)

CHAPTER 15. WORKING WITH SYSTEMD TARGETS

Targets in **systemd** act as synchronization points during the start of your system. Target unit files, which end with the **.target** file extension, represent the **systemd** targets. The purpose of target units is to group together various **systemd** units through a chain of dependencies.

Consider the following examples:

- The **graphical.target** unit for starting a graphical session, starts system services such as the GNOME Display Manager (**gdm.service**) or Accounts Service (**accounts-daemon.service**), and also activates the **multi-user.target** unit.
- Similarly, the **multi-user.target** unit starts other essential system services such as NetworkManager (**NetworkManager.service**) or D-Bus (**dbus.service**) and activates another target unit named **basic.target**.

While working with **systemd** targets, you can view the default target, change it or change the current target.

15.1. VIEWING THE DEFAULT TARGET

You can display the default target using the **systemctl** command or examine the **/etc/systemd/system/default.target** file, which represents the default target unit.

Procedure

- Determine, which target unit is used by default:

```
$ systemctl get-default
graphical.target
```

- Determine the default target using the symbolic link:

```
$ ls -l /usr/lib/systemd/system/default.target
```

15.2. VIEWING THE TARGET UNITS

You can display all unit types or limit your search to the currently loaded target units. By default, the **systemctl list-units** command displays only active units.

Procedure

- List all loaded units regardless of their state:

```
$ systemctl list-units --type target --all
```

- Alternatively, list all currently loaded target units:

```
$ systemctl list-units --type target
```

UNIT	LOAD	ACTIVE	SUB	DESCRIPTION
basic.target	loaded	active	active	Basic System
cryptsetup.target	loaded	active	active	Encrypted Volumes

```

getty.target      loaded active active Login Prompts
graphical.target  loaded active active Graphical Interface
local-fs-pre.target loaded active active Local File Systems (Pre)
local-fs.target   loaded active active Local File Systems
multi-user.target loaded active active Multi-User System
network.target    loaded active active Network
paths.target      loaded active active Paths
remote-fs.target  loaded active active Remote File Systems
sockets.target    loaded active active Sockets
sound.target      loaded active active Sound Card
spice-vdagentd.target loaded active active Agent daemon for Spice guests
swap.target       loaded active active Swap
sysinit.target    loaded active active System Initialization
time-sync.target  loaded active active System Time Synchronized
timers.target     loaded active active Timers

```

LOAD = Reflects whether the unit definition was properly loaded.

ACTIVE = The high-level unit activation state, i.e. generalization of SUB.

SUB = The low-level unit activation state, values depend on unit type.

17 loaded units listed.

15.3. CHANGING THE DEFAULT TARGET

The default target unit is represented by the **/etc/systemd/system/default.target** file. The following procedure describes how to change the default target by using the `systemctl` command:

Procedure

1. To determine the default target unit:

```
# systemctl get-default
```

2. To configure the system to use a different target unit by default:

```
# systemctl set-default multi-user.target
rm /etc/systemd/system/default.target
ln -s /usr/lib/systemd/system/multi-user.target /etc/systemd/system/default.target
```

This command replaces the **/etc/systemd/system/default.target** file with a symbolic link to **/usr/lib/systemd/system/name.target**, where *name* is the name of the target unit you want to use. Replace *multi-user* with the name of the target unit you want to use by default.

Table 15.1. Common targets for `set-default` command

basic	unit target covering basic boot-up
rescue	unit target that pulls in the base system and spawns a rescue shell
multi-user	unit target for setting up a multi-user system
graphical	unit target for setting up a graphical login screen

emergency	unit target that starts an emergency shell on the main console
sysinit	unit target that pulls in the services required for system initialization

3. Reboot

```
# reboot
```

Additional resources

- **systemd.special** man page
- **bootup** man page

15.4. CHANGING THE DEFAULT TARGET USING A SYMBOLIC LINK

You can change the default target by creating a symbolic link to the target you want.

Procedure

1. Determine the default target unit:

```
# ls -l /etc/systemd/system/default.target
```

Note that in certain cases, the **/etc/systemd/system/default.target** link might not exist, and systemd looks for the default target unit in **/usr**. In such cases, determine the default target unit using the following command:

```
# ls -l /usr/lib/systemd/system/default.target
```

2. Delete the **/etc/systemd/system/default.target** link:

```
# rm /etc/systemd/system/default.target
```

3. Create a symbolic link:

```
# ln -sf /usr/lib/systemd/system/graphical.target /etc/systemd/system/default.target
```

4. Reboot the system:

```
# reboot
```

Verification steps

- Verify the newly created **default.target**:

```
$ systemctl get-default
multi-user.target
```

15.5. CHANGING THE CURRENT TARGET

When you set a default target unit, the current target remains unchanged until the next reboot. If you want to change the target unit in the current session without reboot, use the **systemctl isolate** command.

Procedure

- Change to a different target unit in the current session:

```
# systemctl isolate multi-user.target
```

This command starts the target unit named *multi-user* and all dependent units, and immediately stops all others.

Replace *multi-user* with the name of the target unit you want to use by default.

Verification steps

- Verify the newly created default.target:

```
$ systemctl get-default
multi-user.target
```

15.6. BOOTING TO RESCUE MODE

Rescue mode provides a convenient single-user environment and allows you to repair your system in situations when it is unable to complete a regular booting process. In rescue mode, the system attempts to mount all local file systems and start certain important system services, but it does not activate network interfaces or allow more users to be logged into the system at the same time.

Procedure

- To enter the rescue mode, change the current target in the current session:

```
# systemctl rescue
```

Broadcast message from root@localhost on pts/0 (Fri 2013-10-25 18:23:15 CEST):

The system is going down to rescue mode NOW!



NOTE

This command is similar to **systemctl isolate rescue.target**, but it also sends an informative message to all users that are currently logged into the system.

To prevent **systemd** from sending a message, run the following command with the **--no-wall** command-line option:

```
# systemctl --no-wall rescue
```

15.7. BOOTING TO EMERGENCY MODE

Emergency mode provides the most minimal environment possible and allows you to repair your system even in situations when the system is unable to enter rescue mode. In emergency mode, the system mounts the root file system only for reading, does not attempt to mount any other local file systems, does not activate network interfaces, and only starts a few essential services.

Procedure

- To enter the emergency mode, change the current target:

```
# systemctl emergency
```



NOTE

This command is similar to **systemctl isolate emergency.target**, but it also sends an informative message to all users that are currently logged into the system.

To prevent **systemd** from sending this message, run the following command with the **--no-wall** command-line option:

```
# systemctl --no-wall emergency
```

CHAPTER 16. SHUTTING DOWN, SUSPENDING, AND HIBERNATING THE SYSTEM

This section contains instructions about shutting down, suspending, or hibernating your operating system.

16.1. SYSTEM SHUTDOWN

To shut down the system, you can either use the **systemctl** utility directly, or call this utility through the **shutdown** command.

The advantage of using the **shutdown** command is:

- The support for time argument
This is particularly useful for scheduled maintenance. Also, users have more time to react to the warning that a system shutdown has been scheduled.
- The option to cancel the shutdown

Additional resources

- [Shutting down the system using the shutdown command](#)
- [Shutting down the system using the systemctl command](#)
- [Overview of the power management commands with systemctl](#)

16.2. SHUTTING DOWN THE SYSTEM USING THE SHUTDOWN COMMAND

By following this procedure, you can use the **shutdown** command to perform various operations. You can either shut down the system and power off the machine at a certain time, or shut down and halt the system without powering off the machine, or cancel a pending shutdown.

Prerequisites

- Switch to the **root** user

Procedure

- To shut down the system and power off the machine at a certain time, use the command in the following format:

```
shutdown --poweroff hh:mm
```

Where *hh:mm* is the time in 24 hour clock format. The **/run/nologin** file is created 5 minutes before system shutdown to prevent new logins.

When a time argument is used, an optional *wall* message can be appended to the command.

Alternatively, to shut down and halt the system after a delay, without powering off the machine, use:

```
shutdown --halt +m
```

Where *+m* is the delay time in minutes. The **now** keyword is an alias for **+0**.

To cancel a pending shutdown, use:

```
shutdown -c
```

Additional resources

- **shutdown(8)** manual page
- [Shutting down the system using the systemctl command](#)

16.3. SHUTTING DOWN THE SYSTEM USING THE SYSTEMCTL COMMAND

By following this procedure, you can use the **systemctl** command to perform various operations. You can either shut down the system and power off the machine, or shut down and halt the system without powering off the machine.

Prerequisites

- Switch to the **root** user

Procedure

- To shut down the system and power off the machine, use the command in the following format:

```
systemctl poweroff
```

Alternatively, to shut down and halt the system without powering off the machine, use:

```
systemctl halt
```



NOTE

By default, running either of these commands causes systemd to send an informative message to all users that are currently logged into the system. To prevent systemd from sending this message, run the selected command with the **--no-wall** command line option.

Additional resources

- [Shutting down the system using the shutdown command](#)

16.4. RESTARTING THE SYSTEM

You can restart the system by following this procedure.

Prerequisites

- Switch to the **root** user

Procedure

- To restart the system, run the following command:

```
systemctl reboot
```



NOTE

By default, this command causes systemd to send an informative message to all users that are currently logged into the system. To prevent systemd from sending this message, run this command with the **--no-wall** command line option.

16.5. SUSPENDING THE SYSTEM

You can suspend the system by following this procedure.

Prerequisites

- Switch to the **root** user.

Procedure

- To suspend the system, run the following command:

```
systemctl suspend
```

This command saves the system state in RAM and with the exception of the RAM module, powers off most of the devices in the machine. When you turn the machine back on, the system then restores its state from RAM without having to boot again.

Because the system state is saved in RAM and not on the hard disk, restoring the system from suspend mode is significantly faster than from hibernation. However, note that the suspended system state is also vulnerable to power outages.

Additional resources

- [Hibernating the system](#)

16.6. HIBERNATING THE SYSTEM

By following this procedure, you can either hibernate the system, or hibernate and suspend the system.

Prerequisites

- Switch to the **root** user.

Procedure

- To hibernate the system, run the following command:

systemctl hibernate

This command saves the system state on the hard disk drive and powers off the machine. When you turn the machine back on, the system then restores its state from the saved data without having to boot again.

Because the system state is saved on the hard disk and not in RAM, the machine does not have to maintain electrical power to the RAM module. However, as a consequence, restoring the system from hibernation is significantly slower than restoring it from suspend mode.

Alternatively, to hibernate and suspend the system, run the following command:

systemctl hybrid-sleep**Additional resources**

- [Suspending the system](#)

16.7. OVERVIEW OF THE POWER MANAGEMENT COMMANDS WITH SYSTEMCTL

You can use the following list of the **systemctl** commands to control the power management of your system.

Table 16.1. Overview of the systemctl power management commands

systemctl command	Description
systemctl halt	Halts the system.
systemctl poweroff	Powers off the system.
systemctl reboot	Restarts the system.
systemctl suspend	Suspends the system.
systemctl hibernate	Hibernates the system.
systemctl hybrid-sleep	Hibernates and suspends the system.

CHAPTER 17. WORKING WITH SYSTEMD UNIT FILES

This chapter includes the description of **systemd** unit files. The following sections show you how to:

- Create custom unit files
- Convert SysV init scripts to unit files
- Modify existing unit files
- Work with instantiated units

17.1. INTRODUCTION TO UNIT FILES

A unit file contains configuration directives that describe the unit and define its behavior. Several **systemctl** commands work with unit files in the background. To make finer adjustments, system administrator must edit or create unit files manually. [systemd unit files locations](#) lists three main directories where unit files are stored on the system, the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory is reserved for unit files created or customized by the system administrator.

Unit file names take the following form:

unit_name.type_extension

Here, *unit_name* stands for the name of the unit and *type_extension* identifies the unit type. For a complete list of unit types, see [systemd unit files](#)

For example, there usually is **sshd.service** as well as **sshd.socket** unit present on your system.

Unit files can be supplemented with a directory for additional configuration files. For example, to add custom configuration options to **sshd.service**, create the **sshd.service.d/custom.conf** file and insert additional directives there. For more information on configuration directories, see [Modifying existing unit files](#).

Also, the **sshd.service.wants/** and **sshd.service.requires/** directories can be created. These directories contain symbolic links to unit files that are dependencies of the **sshd** service. The symbolic links are automatically created either during installation according to [Install] unit file options or at runtime based on [Unit] options. It is also possible to create these directories and symbolic links manually. For more details on [Install] and [Unit] options, see the tables below.

Many unit file options can be set using the so called **unit specifiers** – wildcard strings that are dynamically replaced with unit parameters when the unit file is loaded. This enables creation of generic unit files that serve as templates for generating instantiated units. See [Working with instantiated units](#).

17.2. UNIT FILE STRUCTURE

Unit files typically consist of three sections:

- The **[Unit]** section – contains generic options that are not dependent on the type of the unit. These options provide unit description, specify the unit's behavior, and set dependencies to other units. For a list of most frequently used [Unit] options, see [Important \[Unit\] section options](#).
- The **[Unit type]** section – if a unit has type-specific directives, these are grouped under a section named after the unit type. For example, service unit files contain the **[Service]** section.

- The **[Install]** section – contains information about unit installation used by **systemctl enable** and **disable** commands. For a list of options for the **[Install]** section, see [Important \[Install\] section options](#).

Additional resources

- [Important \[Unit\] section options](#)
- [Important \[Service\] section options](#)
- [Important \[Install\] section options](#)

17.3. IMPORTANT [UNIT] SECTION OPTIONS

The following tables lists important options of the [Unit] section.

Table 17.1. Important [Unit] section options

Option ^[a]	Description
Description	A meaningful description of the unit. This text is displayed for example in the output of the systemctl status command.
Documentation	Provides a list of URIs referencing documentation for the unit.
After ^[b]	Defines the order in which units are started. The unit starts only after the units specified in After are active. Unlike Requires , After does not explicitly activate the specified units. The Before option has the opposite functionality to After .
Requires	Configures dependencies on other units. The units listed in Requires are activated together with the unit. If any of the required units fail to start, the unit is not activated.
Wants	Configures weaker dependencies than Requires . If any of the listed units does not start successfully, it has no impact on the unit activation. This is the recommended way to establish custom unit dependencies.
Conflicts	Configures negative dependencies, an opposite to Requires .

^[a] For a complete list of options configurable in the [Unit] section, see the **systemd.unit(5)** manual page.

^[b] In most cases, it is sufficient to set only the ordering dependencies with **After** and **Before** unit file options. If you also set a requirement dependency with **Wants** (recommended) or **Requires**, the ordering dependency still needs to be specified. That is because ordering and requirement dependencies work independently from each other.

17.4. IMPORTANT [SERVICE] SECTION OPTIONS

The following tables lists important options of the [Service] section.

Table 17.2. Important [Service] section options

Option ^[a]	Description
Type	<p>Configures the unit process startup type that affects the functionality of ExecStart and related options. One of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * simple – The default value. The process started with ExecStart is the main process of the service. * forking – The process started with ExecStart spawns a child process that becomes the main process of the service. The parent process exits when the startup is complete. * oneshot – This type is similar to simple, but the process exits before starting consequent units. * dbus – This type is similar to simple, but consequent units are started only after the main process gains a D-Bus name. * notify – This type is similar to simple, but consequent units are started only after a notification message is sent via the <code>sd_notify()</code> function. * idle – similar to simple, the actual execution of the service binary is delayed until all jobs are finished, which avoids mixing the status output with shell output of services.
ExecStart	<p>Specifies commands or scripts to be executed when the unit is started. ExecStartPre and ExecStartPost specify custom commands to be executed before and after ExecStart. Type=oneshot enables specifying multiple custom commands that are then executed sequentially.</p>
ExecStop	<p>Specifies commands or scripts to be executed when the unit is stopped.</p>
ExecReload	<p>Specifies commands or scripts to be executed when the unit is reloaded.</p>
Restart	<p>With this option enabled, the service is restarted after its process exits, with the exception of a clean stop by the systemctl command.</p>

Option [a]	Description
RemainAfterExit	If set to True, the service is considered active even when all its processes exited. Default value is False. This option is especially useful if Type=oneshot is configured.
[a] For a complete list of options configurable in the [Service] section, see the systemd.service(5) manual page.	

17.5. IMPORTANT [INSTALL] SECTION OPTIONS

The following tables lists important options of the [Install] section.

Table 17.3. Important [Install] section options

Option [a]	Description
Alias	Provides a space-separated list of additional names for the unit. Most systemctl commands, excluding systemctl enable , can use aliases instead of the actual unit name.
RequiredBy	A list of units that depend on the unit. When this unit is enabled, the units listed in RequiredBy gain a Require dependency on the unit.
WantedBy	A list of units that weakly depend on the unit. When this unit is enabled, the units listed in WantedBy gain a Want dependency on the unit.
Also	Specifies a list of units to be installed or uninstalled along with the unit.
DefaultInstance	Limited to instantiated units, this option specifies the default instance for which the unit is enabled. See Working with instantiated units .
[a] For a complete list of options configurable in the [Install] section, see the systemd.unit(5) manual page.	

17.6. CREATING CUSTOM UNIT FILES

There are several use cases for creating unit files from scratch: you could run a custom daemon, create a second instance of some existing service as in [Creating a custom unit file by using the second instance of the sshd service](#)

On the other hand, if you intend just to modify or extend the behavior of an existing unit, use the instructions from [Modifying existing unit files](#).

Procedure

The following procedure describes the general process of creating a custom service:

1. Prepare the executable file with the custom service. This can be a custom-created script, or an executable delivered by a software provider. If required, prepare a PID file to hold a constant PID for the main process of the custom service. It is also possible to include environment files to store shell variables for the service. Make sure the source script is executable (by executing the **chmod a+x**) and is not interactive.
2. Create a unit file in the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory and make sure it has correct file permissions. Execute as **root**:

```
touch /etc/systemd/system/name.service
```

```
chmod 664 /etc/systemd/system/name.service
```

Replace *name* with a name of the service to be created. Note that file does not need to be executable.

3. Open the ***name.service*** file created in the previous step, and add the service configuration options. There is a variety of options that can be used depending on the type of service you wish to create, see [Unit file structure](#).

The following is an example unit configuration for a network-related service:

```
[Unit]
Description=service_description
After=network.target

[Service]
ExecStart=path_to_executable
Type=forking
PIDFile=path_to_pidfile

[Install]
WantedBy=default.target
```

Where:

- *service_description* is an informative description that is displayed in journal log files and in the output of the **systemctl status** command.
- the **After** setting ensures that the service is started only after the network is running. Add a space-separated list of other relevant services or targets.
- *path_to_executable* stands for the path to the actual service executable.
- **Type=forking** is used for daemons that make the fork system call. The main process of the service is created with the PID specified in *path_to_pidfile*. Find other startup types in [Important \[Service\] section options](#).
- **WantedBy** states the target or targets that the service should be started under. Think of these targets as of a replacement of the older concept of runlevels.

4. Notify **systemd** that a new **name.service** file exists by executing the following command as **root**:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
systemctl start name.service
```



WARNING

Always run the **systemctl daemon-reload** command after creating new unit files or modifying existing unit files. Otherwise, the **systemctl start** or **systemctl enable** commands could fail due to a mismatch between states of **systemd** and actual service unit files on disk. Note, that on systems with a large number of units this can take a long time, as the state of each unit has to be serialized and subsequently deserialized during the reload.

17.7. CREATING A CUSTOM UNIT FILE BY USING THE SECOND INSTANCE OF THE SSHD SERVICE

System Administrators often need to configure and run multiple instances of a service. This is done by creating copies of the original service configuration files and modifying certain parameters to avoid conflicts with the primary instance of the service. The following procedure shows how to create a second instance of the **sshd** service.

Procedure

1. Create a copy of the **sshd_config** file that will be used by the second daemon:

```
# cp /etc/ssh/sshd{-second}_config
```

2. Edit the **sshd-second_config** file created in the previous step to assign a different port number and PID file to the second daemon:

```
Port 22220
PidFile /var/run/sshd-second.pid
```

See the **sshd_config(5)** manual page for more information on **Port** and **PidFile** options. Make sure the port you choose is not in use by any other service. The PID file does not have to exist before running the service, it is generated automatically on service start.

3. Create a copy of the systemd unit file for the **sshd** service:

```
# cp /usr/lib/systemd/system/sshd.service /etc/systemd/system/sshd-second.service
```

4. Alter the **sshd-second.service** created in the previous step as follows:

- a. Modify the **Description** option:

```
Description=OpenSSH server second instance daemon
```

-
- b. Add `sshd.service` to services specified in the **After** option, so that the second instance starts only after the first one has already started:

```
After=syslog.target network.target auditd.service sshd.service
```

- c. The first instance of `sshd` includes key generation, therefore remove the **ExecStartPre=/usr/sbin/sshd-keygen** line.
- d. Add the **-f /etc/ssh/sshd-second_config** parameter to the **sshd** command, so that the alternative configuration file is used:

```
ExecStart=/usr/sbin/sshd -D -f /etc/ssh/sshd-second_config $OPTIONS
```

- e. After the above modifications, the `sshd-second.service` should look as follows:

```
[Unit]
Description=OpenSSH server second instance daemon
After=syslog.target network.target auditd.service sshd.service

[Service]
EnvironmentFile=/etc/sysconfig/ssh
ExecStart=/usr/sbin/sshd -D -f /etc/ssh/sshd-second_config $OPTIONS
ExecReload=/bin/kill -HUP $MAINPID
KillMode=process
Restart=on-failure
RestartSec=42s

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

- 5. If using SELinux, add the port for the second instance of `sshd` to SSH ports, otherwise the second instance of `sshd` will be rejected to bind to the port:

```
# semanage port -a -t ssh_port_t -p tcp 22220
```

- 6. Enable `sshd-second.service`, so that it starts automatically upon boot:

```
# systemctl enable sshd-second.service
```

- 7. Verify if the `sshd-second.service` is running by using the **systemctl status** command.
- 8. Verify if the port is enabled correctly by connecting to the service:

```
$ ssh -p 22220 user@server
```

If the firewall is in use, make sure that it is configured appropriately in order to allow connections to the second instance of `sshd`.

17.8. CONVERTING SYSV INIT SCRIPTS TO UNIT FILES

Before taking time to convert a SysV init script to a unit file, make sure that the conversion was not already done elsewhere. All core services installed on Red Hat Enterprise Linux come with default unit files, and the same applies for many third-party software packages.

Converting an init script to a unit file requires analyzing the script and extracting the necessary information from it. Based on this data you can create a unit file. As init scripts can vary greatly depending on the type of the service, you might need to employ more configuration options for translation than outlined in this chapter. Note that some levels of customization that were available with init scripts are no longer supported by systemd units.

The majority of information needed for conversion is provided in the script's header. The following example shows the opening section of the init script used to start the **postfix** service on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6:

```
#!/bin/bash
# postfix    Postfix Mail Transfer Agent
# chkconfig: 2345 80 30
# description: Postfix is a Mail Transport Agent, which is the program that moves mail from one
# machine to another.
# processname: master
# pidfile: /var/spool/postfix/pid/master.pid
# config: /etc/postfix/main.cf
# config: /etc/postfix/master.cf
### BEGIN INIT INFO
# Provides: postfix MTA
# Required-Start: $local_fs $network $remote_fs
# Required-Stop: $local_fs $network $remote_fs
# Default-Start: 2 3 4 5
# Default-Stop: 0 1 6
# Short-Description: start and stop postfix
# Description: Postfix is a Mail Transport Agent, which is the program that moves mail from one
# machine to another.
### END INIT INFO
```

In the above example, only lines starting with **# chkconfig** and **# description** are mandatory, so you might not find the rest in different init files. The text enclosed between the **BEGIN INIT INFO** and **END INIT INFO** lines is called **Linux Standard Base (LSB) header**. If specified, LSB headers contain directives defining the service description, dependencies, and default runlevels. What follows is an overview of analytic tasks aiming to collect the data needed for a new unit file. The postfix init script is used as an example.

17.9. FINDING THE SYSTEMD SERVICE DESCRIPTION

You can find descriptive information about the script on the line starting with **#description**. Use this description together with the service name in the **Description** option in the [Unit] section of the unit file. The LSB header might contain similar data on the **#Short-Description** and **#Description** lines.

17.10. FINDING THE SYSTEMD SERVICE DEPENDENCIES

The LSB header might contain several directives that form dependencies between services. Most of them are translatable to systemd unit options, see the following table:

Table 17.4. Dependency options from the LSB header

LSB Option	Description	Unit File Equivalent
Provides	Specifies the boot facility name of the service, that can be referenced in other init scripts (with the "\$" prefix). This is no longer needed as unit files refer to other units by their file names.	–
Required-Start	Contains boot facility names of required services. This is translated as an ordering dependency, boot facility names are replaced with unit file names of corresponding services or targets they belong to. For example, in case of postfix , the Required-Start dependency on \$network was translated to the After dependency on network.target.	After, Before
Should-Start	Constitutes weaker dependencies than Required-Start. Failed Should-Start dependencies do not affect the service startup.	After, Before
Required-Stop, Should-Stop	Constitute negative dependencies.	Conflicts

17.11. FINDING DEFAULT TARGETS OF THE SERVICE

The line starting with **#chkconfig** contains three numerical values. The most important is the first number that represents the default runlevels in which the service is started. Map these runlevels to equivalent systemd targets. Then list these targets in the **WantedBy** option in the [Install] section of the unit file. For example, **postfix** was previously started in runlevels 2, 3, 4, and 5, which translates to multiuser.target and graphical.target. Note that the graphical.target depends on multiuser.target, therefore it is not necessary to specify both. You might find information on default and forbidden runlevels also at **#Default-Start** and **#Default-Stop** lines in the LSB header.

The other two values specified on the **#chkconfig** line represent startup and shutdown priorities of the init script. These values are interpreted by **systemd** if it loads the init script, but there is no unit file equivalent.

17.12. FINDING FILES USED BY THE SERVICE

Init scripts require loading a function library from a dedicated directory and allow importing configuration, environment, and PID files. Environment variables are specified on the line starting with **#config** in the init script header, which translates to the **EnvironmentFile** unit file option. The PID file specified on the **#pidfile** init script line is imported to the unit file with the **PIDFile** option.

The key information that is not included in the init script header is the path to the service executable,

and potentially some other files required by the service. In previous versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, init scripts used a Bash case statement to define the behavior of the service on default actions, such as **start**, **stop**, or **restart**, as well as custom-defined actions. The following excerpt from the **postfix** init script shows the block of code to be executed at service start.

```

conf_check() {
    [ -x /usr/sbin/postfix ] || exit 5
    [ -d /etc/postfix ] || exit 6
    [ -d /var/spool/postfix ] || exit 5
}

make_aliasesdb() {
    if [ "$( /usr/sbin/postconf -h alias_database )" == "hash:/etc/aliases" ]
    then
        # /etc/aliases.db might be used by other MTA, make sure nothing
        # has touched it since our last newaliases call
        [ /etc/aliases -nt /etc/aliases.db ] ||
        [ "$ALIASESDB_STAMP" -nt /etc/aliases.db ] ||
        [ "$ALIASESDB_STAMP" -ot /etc/aliases.db ] || return
        /usr/bin/newaliases
        touch -r /etc/aliases.db "$ALIASESDB_STAMP"
    else
        /usr/bin/newaliases
    fi
}

start() {
    [ "$EUID" != "0" ] && exit 4
    # Check that networking is up.
    [ "${NETWORKING}" = "no" ] && exit 1
    conf_check
    # Start daemons.
    echo -n "Starting postfix: "
    make_aliasesdb >/dev/null 2>&1
    [ -x $CHROOT_UPDATE ] && $CHROOT_UPDATE
    /usr/sbin/postfix start 2>/dev/null 1>&2 && success || failure "$prog start"
    RETVAL=$?
    [ $RETVAL -eq 0 ] && touch $lockfile
    echo
    return $RETVAL
}

```

The extensibility of the init script allowed specifying two custom functions, **conf_check()** and **make_aliasesdb()**, that are called from the **start()** function block. On closer look, several external files and directories are mentioned in the above code: the main service executable **/usr/sbin/postfix**, the **/etc/postfix/** and **/var/spool/postfix/** configuration directories, as well as the **/usr/sbin/postconf/** directory.

systemd supports only the predefined actions, but enables executing custom executables with **ExecStart**, **ExecStartPre**, **ExecStartPost**, **ExecStop**, and **ExecReload** options. The **/usr/sbin/postfix** together with supporting scripts are executed on service start. Converting complex init scripts requires understanding the purpose of every statement in the script. Some of the statements are specific to the operating system version, therefore you do not need to translate them. On the other hand, some adjustments might be needed in the new environment, both in unit file as well as in the service executable and supporting files.

17.13. MODIFYING EXISTING UNIT FILES

Services installed on the system come with default unit files that are stored in the **/usr/lib/systemd/system/** directory. System Administrators should not modify these files directly, therefore any customization must be confined to configuration files in the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory.

Procedure

1. Depending on the extent of the required changes, pick one of the following approaches:
 - Create a directory for supplementary configuration files at **/etc/systemd/system/unit.d/**. This method is recommended for most use cases. It enables extending the default configuration with additional functionality, while still referring to the original unit file. Changes to the default unit introduced with a package upgrade are therefore applied automatically. See [Extending the default unit configuration](#) for more information.
 - Create a copy of the original unit file **/usr/lib/systemd/system/** in **/etc/systemd/system/** and make changes there. The copy overrides the original file, therefore changes introduced with the package update are not applied. This method is useful for making significant unit changes that should persist regardless of package updates. See [Overriding the default unit configuration](#) for details.
2. To return to the default configuration of the unit, delete custom-created configuration files in **/etc/systemd/system/**.
3. To apply changes to unit files without rebooting the system, execute:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

The **daemon-reload** option reloads all unit files and recreates the entire dependency tree, which is needed to immediately apply any change to a unit file. As an alternative, you can achieve the same result with the following command, which must be executed under the **root** user:

```
init q
```

4. If the modified unit file belongs to a running service, this service must be restarted to accept new settings:

```
systemctl restart name.service
```

IMPORTANT

To modify properties, such as dependencies or timeouts, of a service that is handled by a SysV initscript, do not modify the initscript itself. Instead, create a **systemd** drop-in configuration file for the service as described in: [Extending the default unit configuration](#) and [Overriding the default unit configuration](#).

Then manage this service in the same way as a normal **systemd** service.

For example, to extend the configuration of the **network** service, do not modify the `/etc/rc.d/init.d/network` initscript file. Instead, create new directory `/etc/systemd/system/network.service.d/` and a **systemd** drop-in file `/etc/systemd/system/network.service.d/my_config.conf`. Then, put the modified values into the drop-in file. Note: **systemd** knows the **network** service as **network.service**, which is why the created directory must be called **network.service.d**

17.14. EXTENDING THE DEFAULT UNIT CONFIGURATION

This section describes how to extend the default unit file with additional configuration options.

Procedure

1. To extend the default unit file with additional configuration options, first create a configuration directory in `/etc/systemd/system/`. If extending a service unit, execute the following command as **root**:

```
mkdir /etc/systemd/system/name.service.d/
```

Replace *name* with the name of the service you want to extend. The above syntax applies to all unit types.

2. Create a configuration file in the directory made in the previous step. Note that the file name must end with the **.conf** suffix. Type:

```
touch /etc/systemd/system/name.service.d/config_name.conf
```

Replace *config_name* with the name of the configuration file. This file adheres to the normal unit file structure, therefore all directives must be specified under appropriate sections, see [Unit file structure](#).

For example, to add a custom dependency, create a configuration file with the following content:

```
[Unit]
Requires=new_dependency
After=new_dependency
```

Where *new_dependency* stands for the unit to be marked as a dependency. Another example is a configuration file that restarts the service after its main process exited, with a delay of 30 seconds:

```
[Service]
Restart=always
RestartSec=30
```

It is recommended to create small configuration files focused only on one task. Such files can be easily moved or linked to configuration directories of other services.

3. To apply changes made to the unit, execute as **root**:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
systemctl restart name.service
```

Example 17.1. Extending the httpd.service configuration

To modify the httpd.service unit so that a custom shell script is automatically executed when starting the Apache service, perform the following steps.

1. Create a directory and a custom configuration file:

```
# mkdir /etc/systemd/system/httpd.service.d/

# touch /etc/systemd/system/httpd.service.d/custom_script.conf
```

2. Provided that the script you want to start automatically with Apache is located at **/usr/local/bin/custom.sh**, insert the following text to the **custom_script.conf** file:

```
[Service]
ExecStartPost=/usr/local/bin/custom.sh
```

3. To apply the unit changes, execute:

```
# systemctl daemon-reload

# systemctl restart httpd.service
```



NOTE

The configuration files from configuration directories in **/etc/systemd/system/** take precedence over unit files in **/usr/lib/systemd/system/**. Therefore, if the configuration files contain an option that can be specified only once, such as **Description** or **ExecStart**, the default value of this option is overridden. Note that in the output of the **systemd-delta** command, described in [Monitoring overridden units](#), such units are always marked as [EXTENDED], even though in sum, certain options are actually overridden.

17.15. OVERRIDING THE DEFAULT UNIT CONFIGURATION

This section describes how to override the default unit configuration.

Procedure

1. To make changes that will persist after updating the package that provides the unit file, first copy the file to the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory. To do so, execute the following command as **root**:

```
cp /usr/lib/systemd/system/name.service /etc/systemd/system/name.service
```

-

Where *name* stands for the name of the service unit you wish to modify. The above syntax applies to all unit types.

2. Open the copied file with a text editor, and make the desired changes. To apply the unit changes, execute as **root**:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
systemctl restart name.service
```

17.16. CHANGING THE TIMEOUT LIMIT

You can specify a timeout value per service to prevent a malfunctioning service from freezing the system. Otherwise, timeout is set by default to 90 seconds for normal services and to 300 seconds for SysV-compatible services.

For example, to extend timeout limit for the **httpd** service:

Procedure

1. Copy the **httpd** unit file to the **/etc/systemd/system/** directory:

```
cp /usr/lib/systemd/system/httpd.service /etc/systemd/system/httpd.service
```

2. Open file **/etc/systemd/system/httpd.service** and specify the **TimeoutStartUsec** value in the **[Service]** section:

```
...
[Service]
...
PrivateTmp=true
TimeoutStartSec=10

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
...
```

3. Reload the **systemd** daemon:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
```

4. **Optional.** Verify the new timeout value:

```
systemctl show httpd -p TimeoutStartUsec
```



NOTE

To change the timeout limit globally, input the **DefaultTimeoutStartSec** in the **/etc/systemd/system.conf** file.

17.17. MONITORING OVERRIDDEN UNITS

This section describes how to display an overview of overridden or modified unit files.

Procedure

- To display an overview of overridden or modified unit files, use the following command:

```
systemd-delta
```

For example, the output of the above command can look as follows:

```
[EQUIVALENT] /etc/systemd/system/default.target → /usr/lib/systemd/system/default.target
[OVERRIDDEN] /etc/systemd/system/autofs.service →
/usr/lib/systemd/system/autofs.service

--- /usr/lib/systemd/system/autofs.service    2014-10-16 21:30:39.000000000 -0400
+ /etc/systemd/system/autofs.service 2014-11-21 10:00:58.513568275 -0500
@@ -8,7 +8,8 @@
EnvironmentFile=-/etc/sysconfig/autofs
ExecStart=/usr/sbin/automount $OPTIONS --pid-file /run/autofs.pid
ExecReload=/usr/bin/kill -HUP $MAINPID
-TimeoutSec=180
+TimeoutSec=240
+Restart=Always

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target

[MASKED] /etc/systemd/system/cups.service → /usr/lib/systemd/system/cups.service
[EXTENDED] /usr/lib/systemd/system/sss.service →
/etc/systemd/system/sss.service.d/journal.conf

4 overridden configuration files found.
```

17.18. WORKING WITH INSTANTIATED UNITS

It is possible to instantiate multiple units from a single template configuration file at runtime. The "@" character is used to mark the template and to associate units with it. Instantiated units can be started from another unit file (using **Requires** or **Wants** options), or with the **systemctl start** command. Instantiated service units are named the following way:

```
template_name@instance_name.service
```

Where *template_name* stands for the name of the template configuration file. Replace *instance_name* with the name for the unit instance. Several instances can point to the same template file with configuration options common for all instances of the unit. Template unit name has the form of:

```
unit_name@.service
```

For example, the following **Wants** setting in a unit file:

```
Wants=getty@ttyA.service getty@ttyB.service
```


first makes **systemd** search for given service units. If no such units are found, the part between "@" and the type suffix is ignored and **systemd** searches for the **getty@.service** file, reads the configuration from it, and starts the services.

For example, the **getty@.service** template contains the following directives:

```
[Unit]
Description=Getty on %I
...
[Service]
ExecStart=/sbin/agetty --noclear %I $TERM
...
```

When the **getty@ttyA.service** and **getty@ttyB.service** are instantiated from the above template, **Description=** is resolved as **Getty on ttyA** and **Getty on ttyB**.

17.19. IMPORTANT UNIT SPECIFIERS

Wildcard characters, called **unit specifiers**, can be used in any unit configuration file. Unit specifiers substitute certain unit parameters and are interpreted at runtime. The following table lists unit specifiers that are particularly useful for template units.

Table 17.5. Important unit specifiers

Unit Specifier	Meaning	Description
%n	Full unit name	Stands for the full unit name including the type suffix. %N has the same meaning but also replaces the forbidden characters with ASCII codes.
%p	Prefix name	Stands for a unit name with type suffix removed. For instantiated units %p stands for the part of the unit name before the "@" character.
%i	Instance name	Is the part of the instantiated unit name between the "@" character and the type suffix. %I has the same meaning but also replaces the forbidden characters for ASCII codes.
%H	Host name	Stands for the hostname of the running system at the point in time the unit configuration is loaded.

Unit Specifier	Meaning	Description
%t	Runtime directory	Represents the runtime directory, which is either /run for the root user, or the value of the <code>XDG_RUNTIME_DIR</code> variable for unprivileged users.

For a complete list of unit specifiers, see the **systemd.unit(5)** manual page.

17.20. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [How to write a service unit file which enforces that particular services have to be started](#)
- [How to decide what dependencies a systemd service unit definition should have](#)
- [Is there any useful information about writing unit files?](#)
- [How to set limits for services in RHEL 7 and systemd](#)

CHAPTER 18. OPTIMIZING SYSTEMD TO SHORTEN THE BOOT TIME

There is a list of systemd unit files that are enabled by default. System services that are defined by these unit files are automatically run at boot, which influences the boot time.

This section describes:

- The tools to examine system boot performance.
- The purpose of systemd units enabled by default, and circumstances under which you can safely disable such systemd units in order to shorten the boot time.

18.1. EXAMINING SYSTEM BOOT PERFORMANCE

To examine system boot performance, you can use the **systemd-analyze** command. This command has many options available. However, this section covers only the selected ones that may be important for systemd tuning in order to shorten the boot time.

For a complete list and detailed description of all options, see the **systemd-analyze** man page.

Prerequisites

- Before starting to examine systemd in order to tune the boot time, you may want to list all enabled services:

Procedure

```
$ systemctl list-unit-files --state=enabled
```

Analyzing overall boot time

Procedure

- For the overall information about the time that the last successful boot took, use:

```
$ systemd-analyze
```

Analyzing unit initialization time

Procedure

- For the information about the initialization time of each systemd unit, use:

```
$ systemd-analyze blame
```

The output lists the units in descending order according to the time they took to initialize during the last successful boot.

Identifying critical units

Procedure

- To identify the units that took most time to initialize at the last successful boot, use:

```
$ systemd-analyze critical-chain
```

The output highlights the units that critically slow down the boot with the red color.

Figure 18.1. The output of the `systemd-analyze critical-chain` command

```
[admin@localhost ~]$ systemd-analyze critical-chain
The time after the unit is active or started is printed after the "@" character.
The time the unit takes to start is printed after the "+" character.

graphical.target @19.706s
├─multi-user.target @19.706s
│   └─tuned.service @5.616s +3.397s
│       └─network.target @5.614s
│           └─wpa_supplicant.service @16.025s +125ms
│               └─dbus.service @2.461s
│                   └─basic.target @2.444s
│                       └─sockets.target @2.444s
│                           └─iscsiuio.socket @2.444s
│                               └─sysinit.target @2.431s
│                                   └─systemd-update-utmp.service @2.419s +10ms
│                                       └─auditd.service @2.292s +126ms
│                                           └─systemd-tmpfiles-setup.service @2.228s +63ms
│                                               └─import-state.service @2.171s +54ms
│                                                   └─local-fs.target @2.168s
│                                                       └─run-user-42.mount @9.536s
│                                                           └─local-fs-pre.target @2.112s
│                                                               └─lvm2-monitor.service @2.087s +25ms
│                                                                   └─dm-event.socket @968ms
│                                                                       └─.mount
│                                                                           └─system.slice
│                                                                               └─.slice

[admin@localhost ~]$
```

18.2. A GUIDE TO SELECTING SERVICES THAT CAN BE SAFELY DISABLED

If you find the boot time of your system long, you can shorten it by disabling some of the services enabled on boot by default.

To list such services, run:

```
$ systemctl list-unit-files --state=enabled
```

To disable a service, run:

```
# systemctl disable service_name
```

However, certain services must stay enabled in order that your operating system is safe and functions in the way you need.

You can use the table below as a guide to selecting the services that you can safely disable. The table lists all services enabled by default on a minimal installation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and for each service it states whether this service can be safely disabled.

The table also provides more information about the circumstances under which the service can be disabled, or the reason why you should not disable the service.

Table 18.1. Services enabled by default on a minimal installation of RHEL

Service name	Can it be disabled?	More information
auditd.service	yes	Disable auditd.service only if you do not need audit messages from the kernel. Be aware that if you disable auditd.service , the /var/log/audit/audit.log file is not produced. Consequently, you are not able to retroactively review some commonly-reviewed actions or events, such as user logins, service starts or password changes. Also note that auditd has two parts: a kernel part, and a service itself. By using the systemctl disable auditd command, you only disable the service, but not the kernel part. To disable system auditing in its entirety, set audit=0 on kernel command line.
autovt@.service	no	This service runs only when it is really needed, so it does not need to be disabled.
crond.service	yes	Be aware that no items from crontab will run if you disable crond.service.
dbus-org.fedoraproject.FirewallD1.service	yes	A symlink to firewalld.service
dbus-org.freedesktop.NetworkManager.service	yes	A symlink to NetworkManager.service
dbus-org.freedesktop.nm-dispatcher.service	yes	A symlink to NetworkManager-dispatcher.service
firewalld.service	yes	Disable firewalld.service only if you do not need firewall.
getty@.service	no	This service runs only when it is really needed, so it does not need to be disabled.
import-state.service	yes	Disable import-state.service only if you do not need to boot from a network storage.
irqbalance.service	yes	Disable irqbalance.service only if you have just one CPU. Do not disable irqbalance.service on systems with multiple CPUs.

Service name	Can it be disabled?	More information
<code>kdump.service</code>	yes	Disable kdump.service only if you do not need reports from kernel crashes.
<code>loadmodules.service</code>	yes	This service is not started unless the <code>/etc/rc.modules</code> or <code>/etc/sysconfig/modules</code> directory exists, which means that it is not started on a minimal RHEL installation.
<code>lvm2-monitor.service</code>	yes	Disable lvm2-monitor.service only if you do not use Logical Volume Manager (LVM).
<code>microcode.service</code>	no	Do not be disable the service because it provides updates of the microcode software in CPU.
<code>NetworkManager-dispatcher.service</code>	yes	Disable NetworkManager-dispatcher.service only if you do not need notifications on network configuration changes (for example in static networks).
<code>NetworkManager-wait-online.service</code>	yes	Disable NetworkManager-wait-online.service only if you do not need working network connection available right after the boot. If the service is enabled, the system does not finish the boot before the network connection is working. This may prolong the boot time significantly.
<code>NetworkManager.service</code>	yes	Disable NetworkManager.service only if you do not need connection to a network.
<code>nis-domainname.service</code>	yes	Disable nis-domainname.service only if you do not use Network Information Service (NIS).
<code>rhsmcertd.service</code>	no	
<code>rngd.service</code>	yes	Disable rngd.service only if you do not need a lot of entropy on your system, or you do not have any sort of hardware generator. Note that the service is necessary in environments that require a lot of good entropy, such as systems used for generation of X.509 certificates (for example the FreeIPA server).
<code>rsyslog.service</code>	yes	Disable rsyslog.service only if you do not need persistent logs, or you set systemd-journald to persistent mode.

Service name	Can it be disabled?	More information
selinux-autorelabel-mark.service	yes	Disable selinux-autorelabel-mark.service only if you do not use SELinux.
sshd.service	yes	Disable sshd.service only if you do not need remote logins by OpenSSH server.
sssd.service	yes	Disable sssd.service only if there are no users who log in the system over the network (for example by using LDAP or Kerberos). Red Hat recommends to disable all sssd-* units if you disable sssd.service .
syslog.service	yes	An alias for rsyslog.service
tuned.service	yes	Disable tuned.service only if you do need to use performance tuning.
lvm2-lvmpolld.socket	yes	Disable lvm2-lvmpolld.socket only if you do not use Logical Volume Manager (LVM).
dnf-makecache.timer	yes	Disable dnf-makecache.timer only if you do not need your package metadata to be updated automatically.
unbound-anchor.timer	yes	Disable unbound-anchor.timer only if you do not need daily update of the root trust anchor for DNS Security Extensions (DNSSEC). This root trust anchor is used by Unbound resolver and resolver library for DNSSEC validation.

To find more information about a service, you can run one of the following commands:

```
$ systemctl cat <service_name>
```

```
$ systemctl help <service_name>
```

The **systemctl cat** command provides the content of the service file located under **/usr/lib/systemd/system/<service>**, as well as all applicable overrides. The applicable overrides include unit file overrides from the **/etc/systemd/system/<service>** file or drop-in files from a corresponding **unit.type.d** directory.

For more information on drop-in files, see the **systemd.unit** man page.

The **systemctl help** command shows the man page of the particular service.

18.3. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **systemctl**(1) man page
- **systemd**(1) man page
- **systemd-delta**(1) man page
- **systemd.directives**(7) man page
- **systemd.unit**(5) man page
- **systemd.service**(5) man page
- **systemd.target**(5) man page
- **systemd.kill**(5) man page
- [systemd Home Page](#)

CHAPTER 19. INTRODUCTION TO MANAGING USER AND GROUP ACCOUNTS

The control of users and groups is a core element of Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) system administration. Each RHEL user has distinct login credentials and can be assigned to various groups to customize their system privileges.

19.1. INTRODUCTION TO USERS AND GROUPS

A user who creates a file is the owner of that file *and* the group owner of that file. The file is assigned separate read, write, and execute permissions for the owner, the group, and those outside that group. The file owner can be changed only by the **root** user. Access permissions to the file can be changed by both the **root** user and the file owner. A regular user can change group ownership of a file they own to a group of which they are a member of.

Each user is associated with a unique numerical identification number called *user ID* (**UID**). Each group is associated with a *group ID* (**GID**). Users within a group share the same permissions to read, write, and execute files owned by that group.

19.2. CONFIGURING RESERVED USER AND GROUP IDS

RHEL reserves user and group IDs below 1000 for system users and groups. You can find the reserved user and group IDs in the **setup** package. To view reserved user and group IDs, use:

```
cat /usr/share/doc/setup*/uidgid
```

It is recommended to assign IDs to the new users and groups starting at 5000, as the reserved range can increase in the future.

To make the IDs assigned to new users start at 5000 by default, modify the **UID_MIN** and **GID_MIN** parameters in the **/etc/login.defs** file.

Procedure

To modify and make the IDs assigned to new users start at 5000 by default:

1. Open the **/etc/login.defs** file in an editor of your choice.
2. Find the lines that define the minimum value for automatic UID selection.

```
# Min/max values for automatic uid selection in useradd
#
UID_MIN          1000
```

3. Modify the **UID_MIN** value to start at 5000.

```
# Min/max values for automatic uid selection in useradd
#
UID_MIN          5000
```

4. Find the lines that define the minimum value for automatic GID selection.

```
# Min/max values for automatic gid selection in groupadd
#
GID_MIN          1000
```

5. Modify the **GID_MIN** value to start at 5000.

```
# Min/max values for automatic gid selection in groupadd
#
GID_MIN          5000
```

The dynamically assigned UIDs and GIDs for the regular users now start at 5000.



NOTE

The UID's and GID's of users and groups created before you changed the `UID_MIN` and `GID_MIN` values do not change.

This will allow new user's group to have same 5000+ ID as UID and GID.



WARNING

Do not raise IDs reserved by the system above 1000 by changing **`SYS_UID_MAX`** to avoid conflict with systems that retain the 1000 limit.

19.3. USER PRIVATE GROUPS

RHEL uses the *user private group* (**UPG**) system configuration, which makes UNIX groups easier to manage. A user private group is created whenever a new user is added to the system. The user private group has the same name as the user for which it was created and that user is the only member of the user private group.

UPGs simplify the collaboration on a project between multiple users. In addition, UPG system configuration makes it safe to set default permissions for a newly created file or directory, as it allows both the user, and the group this user is a part of, to make modifications to the file or directory.

A list of all groups is stored in the `/etc/group` configuration file.

CHAPTER 20. MANAGING USER ACCOUNTS IN THE WEB CONSOLE

The RHEL web console offers a graphical interface that enables you to execute a wide range of administrative tasks without accessing your terminal directly. For example, you can add, edit or remove system user accounts.

After reading this section, you will know:

- From where the existing accounts come from.
- How to add new accounts.
- How to set password expiration.
- How and when to terminate user sessions.

Prerequisites

- Set up the RHEL web console. For details, see [Getting started using the RHEL web console](#).
- Log in to the RHEL web console with an account that has administrator permissions assigned. For details, see [Logging in to the RHEL web console](#).

20.1. SYSTEM USER ACCOUNTS MANAGED IN THE WEB CONSOLE

With user accounts displayed in the RHEL web console you can:

- Authenticate users when accessing the system.
- Set the access rights to the system.

The RHEL web console displays all user accounts located in the system. Therefore, you can see at least one user account just after the first login to the web console.

After logging into the RHEL web console, you can perform the following operations:

- Create new users accounts.
- Change their parameters.
- Lock accounts.
- Terminate user sessions.

20.2. ADDING NEW ACCOUNTS USING THE WEB CONSOLE

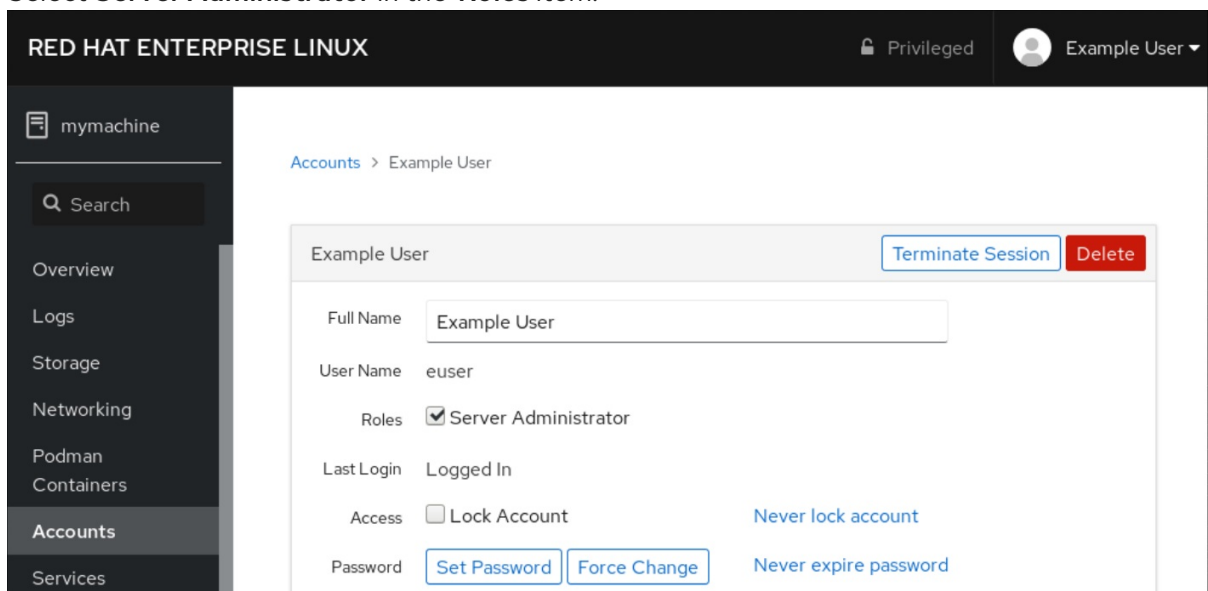
Use the following steps for adding user accounts to the system and setting administration rights to the accounts through the RHEL web console.

Prerequisites

- The RHEL web console must be installed and accessible. For details, see [Installing the web console](#).

Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL web console.
2. Click **Accounts**.
3. Click **Create New Account**.
4. In the **Full Name** field, enter the full name of the user.
The RHEL web console automatically suggests a user name from the full name and fills it in the **User Name** field. If you do not want to use the original naming convention consisting of the first letter of the first name and the whole surname, update the suggestion.
5. In the **Password/Confirm** fields, enter the password and retype it for verification that your password is correct.
The color bar below the fields shows you the security level of the entered password, which does not allow you to create a user with a weak password.
6. Click **Create** to save the settings and close the dialog box.
7. Select the newly created account.
8. Select **Server Administrator** in the **Roles** item.



Now you can see the new account in the **Accounts** settings and you can use its credentials to connect to the system.

20.3. ENFORCING PASSWORD EXPIRATION IN THE WEB CONSOLE

By default, user accounts have set passwords to never expire. You can set system passwords to expire after a defined number of days. When the password expires, the next login attempt will prompt for a password change.

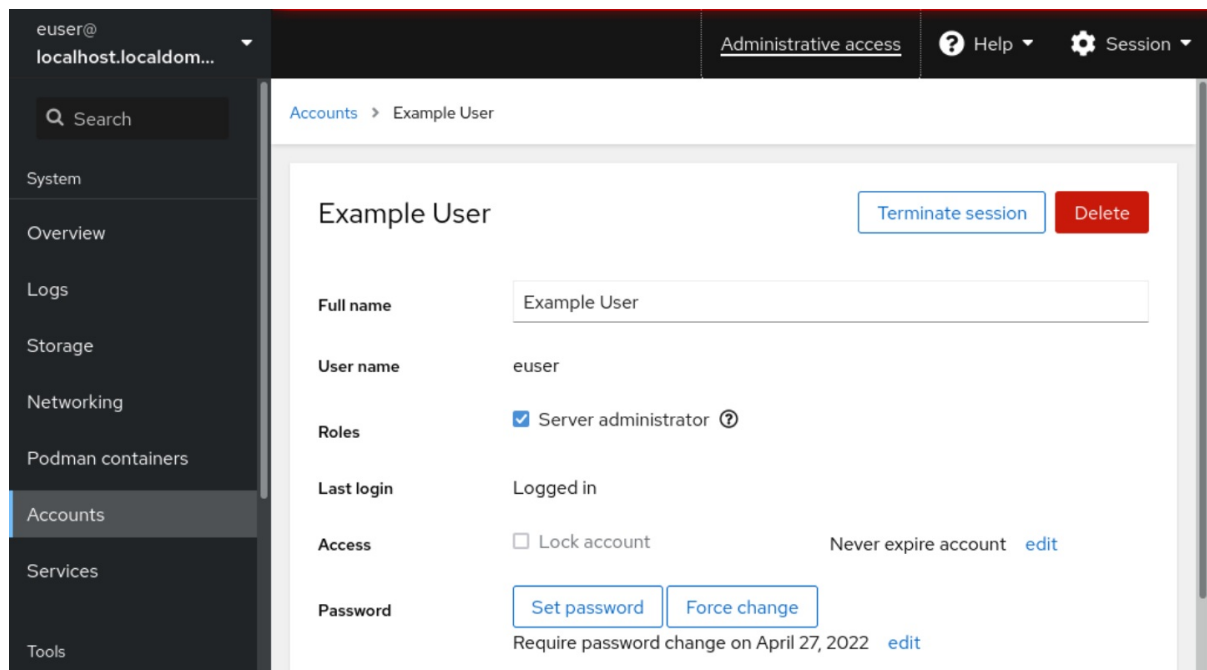
Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL 8 web console.
2. Click **Accounts**.

3. Select the user account for which to enforce password expiration.
4. In the user account settings, click the second **edit**.
5. In the **Password Expiration** dialog box, select **Require password change every ... days** and enter a positive whole number representing the number of days after which the password expires.
6. Click **Change**.

Verification steps

- To verify that the password expiration is set, open the account settings. The RHEL 8 web console displays a link with the date of expiration.



20.4. TERMINATING USER SESSIONS IN THE WEB CONSOLE

A user creates user sessions when logging into the system. Terminating user sessions means to log the user out from the system. It can be helpful if you need to perform administrative tasks sensitive to configuration changes, for example, system upgrades.

In each user account in the RHEL 8 web console, you can terminate all sessions for the account except for the web console session you are currently using. This prevents you from losing access to your system.

Procedure

1. Log in to the RHEL 8 web console.
2. Click **Accounts**.
3. Click the user account for which you want to terminate the session.
4. Click **Terminate Session**.
If the **Terminate Session** button is inactive, the user is not logged in to the system.

The RHEL web console terminates the sessions.

CHAPTER 21. MANAGING USERS FROM THE COMMAND LINE

You can manage users and groups using the command-line interface (CLI). This enables you to add, remove, and modify users and user groups in Red Hat Enterprise Linux environment.

21.1. ADDING A NEW USER FROM THE COMMAND LINE

This section describes how to use the **useradd** utility to add a new user.

Prerequisites

- **Root** access

Procedure

- To add a new user, use:

```
# useradd options username
```

Replace *options* with the command-line options for the **useradd** command, and replace *username* with the name of the user.

Example 21.1. Adding a new user

To add the user **sarah** with user ID **5000**, use:

+

```
# useradd -u 5000 sarah
```

Verification steps

- To verify the new user is added, use the **id** utility.

```
# id sarah
```

The output returns:

```
uid=5000(sarah) gid=5000(sarah) groups=5000(sarah)
```

Additional resources

- **useradd** man page

21.2. ADDING A NEW GROUP FROM THE COMMAND LINE

This section describes how to use the **groupadd** utility to add a new group.

Prerequisites

- **Root** access

Procedure

- To add a new group, use:

```
# groupadd options group-name
```

Replace *options* with the command-line options for the **groupadd** command, and replace *group-name* with the name of the group.

Example 21.2. Adding a new group

To add the group **sysadmins** with group ID **5000**, use:

+

```
# groupadd -g 5000 sysadmins
```

Verification steps

- To verify the new group is added, use the **tail** utility.

```
# tail /etc/group
```

The output returns:

```
sysadmins:x:5000:
```

Additional resources

- **groupadd** man page

21.3. ADDING A USER TO A SUPPLEMENTARY GROUP FROM THE COMMAND LINE

You can add a user to a supplementary group to manage permissions or enable access to certain files or devices.

Prerequisites

- **root** access

Procedure

- To add a group to the supplementary groups of the user, use:

```
# usermod --append -G group-name username
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the group, and replace *username* with the name of the user.

Example 21.3. Adding a user to a supplementary group

To add the user **sysadmin** to the group **system-administrators**, use:

```
# usermod --append -G system-administrators sysadmin
```

Verification steps

- To verify the new groups is added to the supplementary groups of the user **sysadmin**, use:

```
# groups sysadmin
```

The output displays:

```
sysadmin : sysadmin system-administrators
```

21.4. CREATING A GROUP DIRECTORY

Under the UPG system configuration, you can apply the *set-group identification permission* (**setgid** bit) to a directory. The **setgid** bit makes managing group projects that share a directory simpler. When you apply the **setgid** bit to a directory, files created within that directory are automatically assigned to a group that owns the directory. Any user that has the permission to write and execute within this group can now create, modify, and delete files in the directory.

The following section describes how to create group directories.

Prerequisites

- **Root** access

Procedure

1. Create a directory:

```
# mkdir directory-name
```

Replace *directory-name* with the name of the directory.

2. Create a group:

```
# groupadd group-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the group.

3. Add users to the group:

```
# usermod --append -G group-name username
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the group, and replace *username* with the name of the user.

4. Associate the user and group ownership of the directory with the *group-name* group:

```
# chown :group-name directory-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the group, and replace *directory-name* with the name of the directory.

5. Set the write permissions to allow the users to create and modify files and directories and set the **setgid** bit to make this permission be applied within the *directory-name* directory:

```
# chmod g+rxs directory-name
```

Replace *directory-name* with the name of the directory.

Now all members of the ***group-name*** group can create and edit files in the ***directory-name*** directory. Newly created files retain the group ownership of ***group-name*** group.

Verification steps

- To verify the correctness of set permissions, use:

```
# ls -ld directory-name
```

Replace *directory-name* with the name of the directory.

The output returns:

```
drwxrwsr-x. 2 root group-name 6 Nov 25 08:45 directory-name
```

CHAPTER 22. EDITING USER GROUPS USING THE COMMAND LINE

A user belongs to a certain set of groups that allow a logical collection of users with a similar access to files and folders. You can edit the primary and supplementary user groups from the command line to change the user's permissions.

22.1. PRIMARY AND SUPPLEMENTARY USER GROUPS

A group is an entity which ties together multiple user accounts for a common purpose, such as granting access to particular files.

On Linux, user groups can act as primary or supplementary. Primary and supplementary groups have the following properties:

Primary group

- Every user has just one primary group at all times.
- You can change the user's primary group.

Supplementary groups

- You can add an existing user to an existing supplementary group to manage users with the same security and access privileges within the group.
- Users can be members of zero or multiple supplementary groups.

22.2. LISTING THE PRIMARY AND SUPPLEMENTARY GROUPS OF A USER

You can list the groups of users to see which primary and supplementary groups they belong to.

Procedure

- Display the names of the primary and any supplementary group of a user:

```
$ groups user-name
```

Replace *user-name* with the name of the user. If you do not provide a user name, the command displays the group membership for the current user. The first group is the primary group followed by the optional supplementary groups.

Example 22.1. Listing of groups for user sarah:

```
$ groups sarah
```

The output displays:

```
sarah : sarah wheel developer
```

User **sarah** has a primary group **sarah** and is a member of supplementary groups **wheel** and **developer**.

Example 22.2. Listing of groups for user marc:

```
$ groups marc
```

The output displays:

```
marc : marc
```

User **marc** has only a primary group **marc** and no supplementary groups.

22.3. CHANGING THE PRIMARY GROUP OF A USER

You can change the primary group of an existing user to a new group.

Prerequisites:

1. **root** access
2. The new group must exist

Procedure

- Change the primary group of a user:

```
# usermod -g group-name user-name
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the new primary group, and replace *user-name* with the name of the user.



NOTE

When you change a user's primary group, the command also automatically changes the group ownership of all files in the user's home directory to the new primary group. You must fix the group ownership of files outside of the user's home directory manually.

Example 22.3. Example of changing the primary group of a user:

If the user **sarah** belongs to the primary group **sarah1**, and you want to change the primary group of the user to **sarah2**, use:

```
# usermod -g sarah2 sarah
```

Verification steps

- Verify that you changed the primary group of the user:

```
$ groups sarah
```

The output displays:

```
sarah : sarah2
```

22.4. ADDING A USER TO A SUPPLEMENTARY GROUP FROM THE COMMAND LINE

You can add a user to a supplementary group to manage permissions or enable access to certain files or devices.

Prerequisites

- **root** access

Procedure

- To add a group to the supplementary groups of the user, use:

```
# usermod --append -G group-name username
```

Replace *group-name* with the name of the group, and replace *username* with the name of the user.

Example 22.4. Adding a user to a supplementary group

To add the user **sysadmin** to the group **system-administrators**, use:

```
# usermod --append -G system-administrators sysadmin
```

Verification steps

- To verify the new groups is added to the supplementary groups of the user **sysadmin**, use:

```
# groups sysadmin
```

The output displays:

```
sysadmin : sysadmin system-administrators
```

22.5. REMOVING A USER FROM A SUPPLEMENTARY GROUP

You can remove an existing user from a supplementary group to limit their permissions or access to files and devices.

Prerequisites

- **root** access

Procedure

- Remove a user from a supplementary group:

```
# gpasswd -d user-name group-name
```

Replace *user-name* with the name of the user, and replace *group-name* with the name of the supplementary group.

Example 22.5. Removing user from a supplementary group

If the user sarah has a primary group **sarah2**, and belongs to the secondary groups **wheel** and **developers**, and you want to remove that user from the group **developers**, use:

```
# gpasswd -d sarah developers
```

Verification steps

- Verify that you removed the user sarah from the secondary group developers:

```
$ groups sarah
```

The output displays:

```
sarah : sarah2 wheel
```

22.6. CHANGING ALL OF THE SUPPLEMENTARY GROUPS OF A USER

You can overwrite the list of supplementary groups that you want the user to remain a member of.

Prerequisites

- **root** access
- The supplementary groups must exist

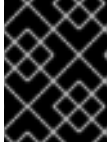
Procedure

- Overwrite a list of user's supplementary groups:

```
# usermod -G group-names username
```

Replace *group-names* with the name of one or more supplementary groups. To add the user to several supplementary groups at once, separate the group names using commas and no intervening spaces. For example: **wheel,developer**.

Replace *user-name* with the name of the user.



IMPORTANT

If the user is currently a member of a group that you do not specify, the command removes the user from the group.

Example 22.6. Changing the list of supplementary groups of a user

If the user **sarah** has a primary group **sarah2**, and belongs to the supplementary group **wheel**, and you want the user to belong to three more supplementary groups **developer**, **sysadmin**, and **security**, use:

```
# usermod -G wheel,developer,sysadmin,security sarah
```

Verification steps

- Verify that you set the list of the supplementary groups correct:

```
# groups sarah
```

The output displays:

```
sarah : sarah2 wheel developer sysadmin security
```

CHAPTER 23. MANAGING SUDO ACCESS

System administrators can grant **sudo** access to allow non-root users to execute administrative commands that are normally reserved for the **root** user. As a result, non-root users can enter such commands without logging in to the **root** user account.

23.1. USER AUTHORIZATIONS IN SUDOERS

The **/etc/sudoers** file specifies which users can run which commands using the **sudo** command. The rules can apply to individual users and user groups. You can also use aliases to simplify defining rules for groups of hosts, commands, and even users. Default aliases are defined in the first part of the **/etc/sudoers** file.

When a user tries to use **sudo** privileges to run a command that is not allowed in the **/etc/sudoers** file, the system records a message containing **username : user NOT in sudoers** to the journal log.

The default **/etc/sudoers** file provides information and examples of authorizations. You can activate a specific example rule by removing the **#** comment character from the beginning of the line. The authorizations section relevant for user is marked with the following introduction:

```
## Next comes the main part: which users can run what software on
## which machines (the sudoers file can be shared between multiple
## systems).
```

You can use the following format to create new **sudoers** authorizations and to modify existing authorizations:

```
username hostname=path/to/command
```

Where:

- *username* is the name of the user or group, for example, **user1** or **%group1**.
- *hostname* is the name of the host on which the rule applies.
- *path/to/command* is the complete absolute path to the command. You can also limit the user to only performing a command with specific options and arguments by adding those options after the command path. If you do not specify any options, the user can use the command with all options.

You can replace any of these variables with **ALL** to apply the rule to all users, hosts, or commands.



WARNING

With overly permissive rules, such as **ALL ALL=(ALL) ALL**, all users are able to run all commands as all users on all hosts. This can lead to security risks.

You can specify the arguments negatively using the **!** operator. For example, use **!root** to specify all users except the **root** user. Note that using the allowlists to allow specific users, groups, and commands,

is more secure than using the blocklists to disallowing specific users, groups, and commands. By using the allowlists you also block new unauthorized users or groups.



WARNING

Avoid using negative rules for commands because users can overcome such rules by renaming commands using the **alias** command.

The system reads the **/etc/sudoers** file from beginning to end. Therefore, if the file contains multiple entries for a user, the entries are applied in order. In case of conflicting values, the system uses the last match, even if it is not the most specific match.

The preferred way of adding new rules to **sudoers** is by creating new files in the **/etc/sudoers.d/** directory instead of entering rules directly to the **/etc/sudoers** file. This is because the contents of this directory are preserved during system updates. In addition, it is easier to fix any errors in the separate files than in the **/etc/sudoers** file. The system reads the files in the **/etc/sudoers.d** directory when it reaches the following line in the **/etc/sudoers** file:

```
#includedir /etc/sudoers.d
```

Note that the number sign **#** at the beginning of this line is part of the syntax and does not mean the line is a comment. The names of files in that directory must not contain a period **.** and must not end with a tilde **~**.

Additional resources

- **sudo(8)** and **sudoers(5)** man pages

23.2. GRANTING SUDO ACCESS TO A USER

System administrators can grant **sudo** access to allow non-root users to execute administrative commands. The **sudo** command provides users with administrative access without using the password of the **root** user.

When users need to perform an administrative command, they can precede that command with **sudo**. The command is then executed as if they were the **root** user.

Be aware of the following limitations:

- Only users listed in the **/etc/sudoers** configuration file can use the **sudo** command.
- The command is executed in the shell of the user, not in the **root** shell.

Prerequisites

- **root** access

Procedure

1. As root, open the **/etc/sudoers** file.

```
# visudo
```

The **/etc/sudoers** file defines the policies applied by the **sudo** command.

2. In the **/etc/sudoers** file, find the lines that grant **sudo** access to users in the administrative **wheel** group.

```
## Allows people in group wheel to run all commands
%wheel    ALL=(ALL)    ALL
```

3. Make sure the line that starts with **%wheel** does not have the **#** comment character before it.
4. Save any changes, and exit the editor.
5. Add users you want to grant **sudo** access to into the administrative **wheel** group.

```
# usermod --append -G wheel <username>
```

Replace **<username>** with the name of the user.

Verification steps

- Verify that the user is added to the administrative **wheel** group:

```
# id <username>
uid=5000(<username>) gid=5000(<username>) groups=5000(<username>),10(wheel)
```

Additional resources

- **sudo(8)**, **visudo(8)**, and **sudoers(5)** man pages

23.3. ENABLING UNPRIVILEGED USERS TO RUN CERTAIN COMMANDS

As an administrator, you can allow unprivileged users to enter certain commands on specific workstations by configuring a policy in the **/etc/sudoers.d/** directory.

For example, you can enable the user **<example.user>** to install programs on the **host.example.com** workstation using the **dnf** command with **sudo** privileges.

Prerequisites

- You must have **root** access to the system.

Procedure

1. As **root**, create a new **sudoers.d** directory under **/etc/**:

```
# mkdir -p /etc/sudoers.d/
```

2. Create a new file in the **/etc/sudoers.d** directory:

```
# visudo -f /etc/sudoers.d/<example.user>
```

The file opens automatically.

3. Add the following line to the `/etc/sudoers.d/<example.user>` file:

```
<example.user> <host.example.com> = /usr/bin/dnf
```

To allow two and more commands on the same host on one line, you can list them separated by a comma followed by a space.

4. Optional: To receive email notifications every time the user `<example.user>` attempts to use **sudo** privileges, add the following lines to the file:

```
Defaults    mail_always
Defaults    mailto="<email@example.com>"
```

5. Save the changes, and exit the editor.

Verification

1. To verify if the user `<example.user>` can run the **dnf** command with **sudo** privileges, switch the account:

```
# su <example.user> -
```

2. Enter the **sudo dnf** command:

```
$ sudo dnf
[sudo] password for <example.user>:
```

Enter the **sudo** password for the user `<example.user>`.

3. The system displays the list of **dnf** commands and options:

```
...
usage: dnf [options] COMMAND
...
```

If the system returns the **<example.user> is not in the sudoers file. This incident will be reported** error message, you have not created the file for `<example.user>` in `/etc/sudoers.d/`.

If you receive the **<example.user> is not allowed to run sudo on <host.example.com>** error message, you have not completed the configuration correctly. Ensure that you are logged in as **root** and that you followed the steps thoroughly.

Additional resources

- **sudo(8)**, **visudo(8)**, and **sudoers(5)** man pages

CHAPTER 24. CHANGING AND RESETTING THE ROOT PASSWORD

If the existing root password is no longer satisfactory or is forgotten, you can change or reset it both as the **root** user and a non-root user.

24.1. CHANGING THE ROOT PASSWORD AS THE ROOT USER

This section describes how to use the **passwd** command to change the **root** password as the **root** user.

Prerequisites

- **Root** access

Procedure

- To change the **root** password, use:

```
# passwd
```

You are prompted to enter your current password before you can change it.

24.2. CHANGING OR RESETTING THE FORGOTTEN ROOT PASSWORD AS A NON-ROOT USER

This section describes how to use the **passwd** command to change or reset the forgotten **root** password as a non-root user.

Prerequisites

- You are able to log in as a non-root user.
- You are a member of the administrative **wheel** group.

Procedure

- To change or reset the **root** password as a non-root user that belongs to the **wheel** group, use:

```
$ sudo passwd root
```

You are prompted to enter your current non-root password before you can change the **root** password.

24.3. RESETTING THE ROOT PASSWORD ON BOOT

If you are unable to log in as a non-root user or do not belong to the administrative **wheel** group, you can reset the root password on boot by switching into a specialized **chroot jail** environment.

Procedure

1. Reboot the system and, on the GRUB 2 boot screen, press the **e** key to interrupt the boot process.

The kernel boot parameters appear.

```
load_video
set gfx_payload=keep
insmod gzio
linux ($root)/vmlinuz-4.18.0-80.el8.x86_64 root=/dev/mapper/rhel-root ro crash\
kernel=auto resume=/dev/mapper/rhel-swap rd.lvm.lv/swap rhgb quiet
initrd ($root)/initramfs-4.18.0-80.el8.x86_64.img $tuned_initrd
```

2. Go to the end of the line that starts with **linux**.

```
linux ($root)/vmlinuz-4.18.0-80.el8.x86_64 root=/dev/mapper/rhel-root ro crash\
kernel=auto resume=/dev/mapper/rhel-swap rd.lvm.lv/swap rhgb quiet
```

Press **Ctrl+e** to jump to the end of the line.

3. Add **rd.break** to the end of the line that starts with **linux**.

```
linux ($root)/vmlinuz-4.18.0-80.el8.x86_64 root=/dev/mapper/rhel-root ro crash\
kernel=auto resume=/dev/mapper/rhel-swap rd.lvm.lv/swap rhgb quiet rd.break
```

4. Press **Ctrl+x** to start the system with the changed parameters.
The **switch_root** prompt appears.

5. Remount the file system as writable:

```
mount -o remount,rw /sysroot
```

The file system is mounted as read-only in the **/sysroot** directory. Remounting the file system as writable allows you to change the password.

6. Enter the **chroot** environment:

```
chroot /sysroot
```

The **sh-4.4#** prompt appears.

7. Reset the **root** password:

```
passwd
```

Follow the instructions displayed by the command line to finalize the change of the **root** password.

8. Enable the SELinux relabeling process on the next system boot:

```
touch /.autorelabel
```

9. Exit the **chroot** environment:

```
exit
```

10. Exit the **switch_root** prompt:

-

```
exit
```

11. Wait until the SELinux relabeling process is finished. Note that relabeling a large disk might take a long time. The system reboots automatically when the process is complete.

Verification steps

1. To verify that the **root** password is successfully changed, log in as a normal user and open the Terminal.
2. Run the interactive shell as root:

```
$ su
```

3. Enter your new **root** password.
4. Print the user name associated with the current effective user ID:

```
whoami
```

The output returns:

```
root
```

CHAPTER 25. MANAGING FILE PERMISSIONS

File permissions control the ability of user and group accounts to view, modify, access, and execute the contents of the files and directories.

Every file or directory has three levels of ownership:

- User owner (**u**).
- Group owner (**g**).
- Others (**o**).

Each level of ownership can be assigned the following permissions:

- Read (**r**).
- Write (**w**).
- Execute (**x**).

Note that the execute permission for a file allows you to execute that file. The execute permission for a directory allows you to access the contents of the directory, but not execute it.

When a new file or directory is created, the default set of permissions are automatically assigned to it. The default permissions for a file or directory are based on two factors:

- Base permission.
- The *user file-creation mode mask* (**umask**).

25.1. BASE FILE PERMISSIONS

Whenever a new file or directory is created, a base permission is automatically assigned to it. Base permissions for a file or directory can be expressed in *symbolic* or *octal* values.

Permission	Symbolic value	Octal value
No permission	---	0
Execute	--x	1
Write	-w-	2
Write and execute	-wx	3
Read	r--	4
Read and execute	r-x	5
Read and write	rw-	6

Read, write, execute	rwX	7
----------------------	-----	---

The base permission for a directory is **777 (drwxrwxrwx)**, which grants everyone the permissions to read, write, and execute. This means that the directory owner, the group, and others can list the contents of the directory, create, delete, and edit items within the directory, and descend into it.

Note that individual files within a directory can have their own permission that might prevent you from editing them, despite having unrestricted access to the directory.

The base permission for a file is **666 (-rw-rw-rw-)**, which grants everyone the permissions to read and write. This means that the file owner, the group, and others can read and edit the file.

Example 25.1. Permissions for a file

If a file has the following permissions:

```
$ ls -l
-rwxrw----. 1 sysadmins sysadmins 2 Mar 2 08:43 file
```

- **-** indicates it is a file.
- **rwX** indicates that the file owner has permissions to read, write, and execute the file.
- **rw-** indicates that the group has permissions to read and write, but not execute the file.
- **---** indicates that other users have no permission to read, write, or execute the file.
- **.** indicates that the SELinux security context is set for the file.

Example 25.2. Permissions for a directory

If a directory has the following permissions:

```
$ ls -dl directory
drwxr-----. 1 sysadmins sysadmins 2 Mar 2 08:43 directory
```

- **d** indicates it is a directory.
- **rwX** indicates that the directory owner has the permissions to read, write, and access the contents of the directory.
As a directory owner, you can list the items (files, subdirectories) within the directory, access the content of those items, and modify them.
- **r--** indicates that the group has permissions to read, but not write or access the contents of the directory.
As a member of the group that owns the directory, you can list the items within the directory. You cannot access information about the items within the directory or modify them.
- **---** indicates that other users have no permission to read, write, or access the contents of the directory.
As someone who is not a user owner, or as group owner of the directory, you cannot list the items within the directory, access information about those items, or modify them.

- . indicates that the SELinux security context is set for the directory.



NOTE

The base permission that is automatically assigned to a file or directory is **not** the default permission the file or directory ends up with. When you create a file or directory, the base permission is altered by the *umask*. The combination of the base permission and the *umask* creates the default permission for files and directories.

25.2. USER FILE-CREATION MODE MASK

The user file-creation mode mask (*umask*) is variable that controls how file permissions are set for newly created files and directories. The *umask* automatically removes permissions from the base permission value to increase the overall security of a linux system. The *umask* can be expressed in *symbolic* or *octal* values.

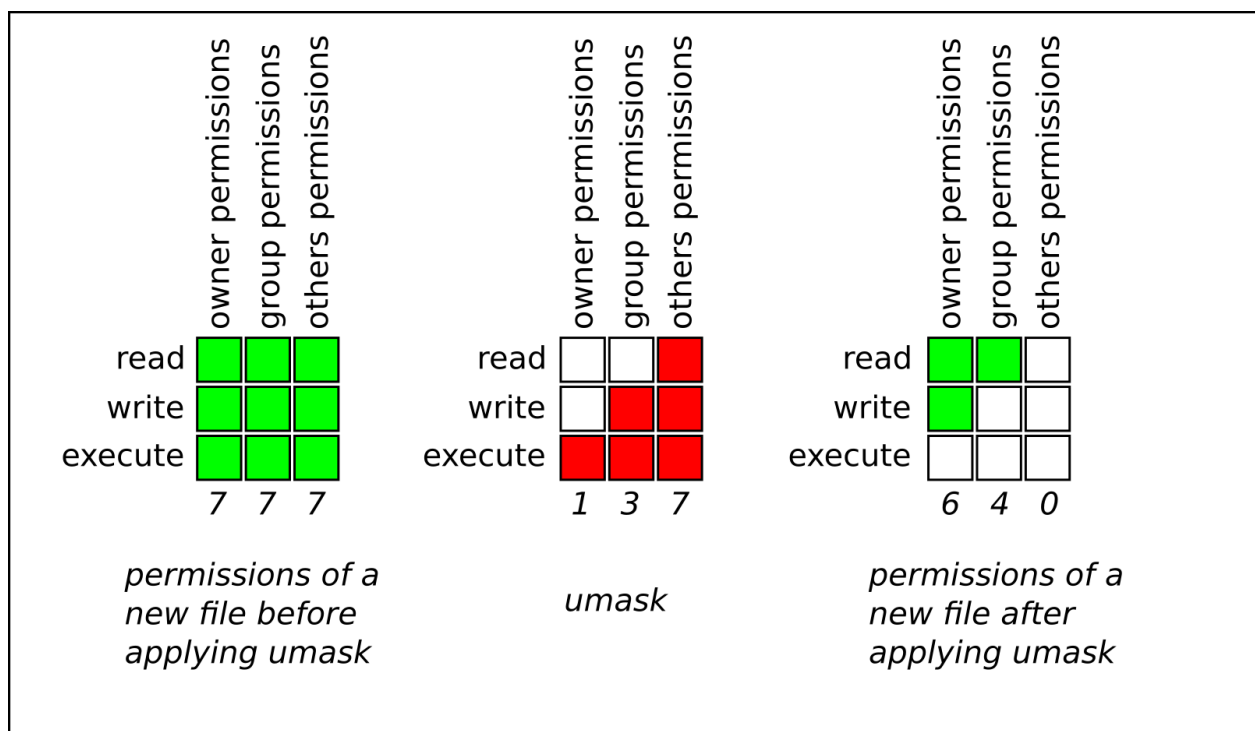
Permission	Symbolic value	Octal value
Read, write, and execute	rwX	0
Read and write	rw-	1
Read and execute	r-X	2
Read	r--	3
Write and execute	-wX	4
Write	-w-	5
Execute	--X	6
No permissions	---	7

The default *umask* for a standard user is **0002**. The default *umask* for a **root** user is **0022**.

The first digit of the *umask* represents special permissions (sticky bit,). The last three digits of the *umask* represent the permissions that are removed from the user owner (**u**), group owner (**g**), and others (**o**) respectively.

Example 25.3. Applying the umask when creating a file

The following example illustrates how the *umask* with an octal value of **0137** is applied to the file with the base permission of **777**, to create the file with the default permission of **640**.



25.3. DEFAULT FILE PERMISSIONS

The default permissions are set automatically for all newly created files and directories. The value of the default permissions is determined by applying the *umask* to the base permission.

Example 25.4. Default permissions for a directory created by a standard user

When a **standard user** creates a new **directory**, the *umask* is set to **002 (rwxrwxr-x)**, and the base permissions for a directory are set to **777 (rwxrwxrwx)**. This brings the default permissions to **775 (drwxrwxr-x)**.

	Symbolic value	Octal value
Base permission	rwxrwxrwx	777
Umask	rwxrwxr-x	002
Default permission	rwxrwxr-x	775

This means that the directory owner and the group can list the contents of the directory, create, delete, and edit items within the directory, and descend into it. Other users can only list the contents of the directory and descend into it.

Example 25.5. Default permissions for a file created by a standard user

When a **standard user** creates a new **file**, the *umask* is set to **002 (rwxrwxr-x)**, and the base permissions for a file are set to **666 (rw-rw-rw-)**. This brings the default permissions to **664 (-rw-rw-r-)**.

	Symbolic value	Octal value
Base permission	rw-rw-rw-	666
Umask	rw-rw-rw-	002
Default permission	rw-rw-r--	664

This means that the file owner and the group can read and edit the file, while other users can only read the file.

Example 25.6. Default permissions for a directory created by the root user

When a **root user** creates a new **directory**, the *umask* is set to **022 (rwxr-xr-x)**, and the base permissions for a directory are set to **777 (rwxrwxrwx)**. This brings the default permissions to **755 (rwxr-xr-x)**.

	Symbolic value	Octal value
Base permission	rwxrwxrwx	777
Umask	rwxr-xr-x	022
Default permission	rwxr-xr-x	755

This means that the directory owner can list the contents of the directory, create, delete, and edit items within the directory, and descend into it. The group and others can only list the contents of the directory and descend into it.

Example 25.7. Default permissions for a file created by the root user

When a **root user** creates a new **file**, the *umask* is set to **022 (rwxr-xr-x)**, and the base permissions for a file are set to **666 (rw-rw-rw-)**. This brings the default permissions to **644 (-rw-r--r-)**.

	Symbolic value	Octal value
Base permission	rw-rw-rw-	666
Umask	rwxr-xr-x	022
Default permission	rw-r--r--	644

This means that the file owner can read and edit the file, while the group and others can only read the file.

**NOTE**

For security reasons, regular files cannot have execute permissions by default, even if the `umask` is set to **000** (**rw-rw-rw-**). However, directories can be created with execute permissions.

25.4. CHANGING FILE PERMISSIONS USING SYMBOLIC VALUES

You can use the **chmod** utility with symbolic values (a combination letters and signs) to change file permissions for a file or directory.

You can assign the following *permissions*:

- Read (**r**)
- Write (**w**)
- Execute (**x**)

Permissions can be assigned to the following *levels of ownership*:

- User owner (**u**)
- Group owner (**g**)
- Other (**o**)
- All (**a**)

To add or remove permissions you can use the following *signs*:

- **+** to add the permissions on top of the existing permissions
- **-** to remove the permissions from the existing permission
- **=** to remove the existing permissions and explicitly define the new ones

Procedure

- To change the permissions for a file or directory, use:

```
$ chmod <level><operation><permission> file-name
```

Replace **<level>** with the [level of ownership](#) you want to set the permissions for. Replace **<operation>** with one of the [signs](#). Replace **<permission>** with the [permissions](#) you want to assign. Replace *file-name* with the name of the file or directory. For example, to grant everyone the permissions to read, write, and execute (**rw**) **my-script.sh**, use the **chmod a=rx my-script.sh** command.

See [Base file permissions](#) for more details.

Verification steps

- To see the permissions for a particular file, use:

```
$ ls -l file-name
```

-

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file.

- To see the permissions for a particular directory, use:

```
$ ls -dl directory-name
```

Replace *directory-name* with the name of the directory.

- To see the permissions for all the files within a particular directory, use:

```
$ ls -l directory-name
```

Replace *directory-name* with the name of the directory.

Example 25.8. Changing permissions for files and directories

- To change file permissions for **my-file.txt** from **-rw-rw-r--** to **-rw-----**, use:

1. Display the current permissions for **my-file.txt**:

```
$ ls -l my-file.txt
-rw-rw-r--. 1 username username 0 Feb 24 17:56 my-file.txt
```

2. Remove the permissions to read, write, and execute (**rw**x) the file from group owner (**g**) and others (**o**):

```
$ chmod go= my-file.txt
```

Note that any permission that is not specified after the equals sign (=) is automatically prohibited.

3. Verify that the permissions for **my-file.txt** were set correctly:

```
$ ls -l my-file.txt
-rw-----. 1 username username 0 Feb 24 17:56 my-file.txt
```

- To change file permissions for **my-directory** from **drwxrwx---** to **drwxrwxr-x**, use:

1. Display the current permissions for **my-directory**:

```
$ ls -dl my-directory
drwxrwx---. 2 username username 4096 Feb 24 18:12 my-directory
```

2. Add the read and execute (**r-x**) access for all users (**a**):

```
$ chmod o+rx my-directory
```

3. Verify that the permissions for **my-directory** and its content were set correctly:

```
$ ls -dl my-directory
drwxrwxr-x. 2 username username 4096 Feb 24 18:12 my-directory
```

25.5. CHANGING FILE PERMISSIONS USING OCTAL VALUES

You can use the **chmod** utility with octal values (numbers) to change file permissions for a file or directory.

Procedure

- To change the file permissions for an existing file or directory, use:

```
$ chmod octal_value file-name
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file or directory. Replace *octal_value* with an octal value. See [Base file permissions](#) for more details.

CHAPTER 26. MANAGING THE UMASK

You can use the **umask** utility to display, set, or change the current or default value of the *umask*.

26.1. DISPLAYING THE CURRENT VALUE OF THE UMASK

You can use the **umask** utility to display the current value of the *umask* in symbolic or octal mode.

Procedure

- To display the current value of the *umask* in symbolic mode, use:

```
$ umask -S
```

- To display the current value of the *umask* in the octal mode, use:

```
$ umask
```



NOTE

When displaying the *umask* in octal mode, you may notice it displayed as a four digit number (**0002** or **0022**). The first digit of the *umask* represents a special bit (sticky bit, SGID bit, or SUID bit). If the first digit is set to **0**, the special bit is not set.

26.2. DISPLAYING THE DEFAULT BASH UMASK

There are a number of shells you can use, such as **bash**, **ksh**, **zsh** and **tcsh**. Those shells can behave as login or non-login shells. You can invoke the login shell by opening a native or a GUI terminal.

To determine whether you are executing a command in a login or a non-login shell, use the **echo \$0** command.

Example 26.1. Determining if you are working in a login or a non-login bash shell

- If the output of the **echo \$0** command returns **bash**, you are executing the command in a non-login shell.

```
$ echo $0
bash
```

The default *umask* for the non-login shell is set in the **/etc/bashrc** configuration file.

- If the output of the **echo \$0** command returns **-bash**, you are executing the command in a login shell.

```
# echo $0
-bash
```

The default *umask* for the login shell is set in the **/etc/profile** configuration file.

Procedure

- To display the default **bash** *umask* for the non-login shell, use:

```
$ grep umask /etc/bashrc
```

The output returns:

```
# By default, we want umask to get set. This sets it for non-login shell.
umask 002
umask 022
```

- To display the default **bash** *umask* for the login shell, use:

```
$ grep umask /etc/profile
```

The output returns:

```
# By default, we want umask to get set. This sets it for login shell
umask 002
umask 022
```

26.3. SETTING THE UMASK USING SYMBOLIC VALUES

You can use the **umask** utility with symbolic values (a combination letters and signs) to set the *umask* for the current shell session

You can assign the following *permissions*:

- Read (**r**)
- Write (**w**)
- Execute (**x**)

Permissions can be assigned to the following *levels of ownership*:

- User owner (**u**)
- Group owner (**g**)
- Other (**o**)
- All (**a**)

To add or remove permissions you can use the following *signs*:

- **+** to add the permissions on top of the existing permissions
- **-** to remove the permissions from the existing permission
- **=** to remove the existing permissions and explicitly define the new ones

**NOTE**

Any permission that is not specified after the equals sign (=) is automatically prohibited.

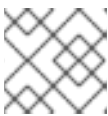
Procedure

- To set the *umask* for the current shell session, use:

```
$ umask -S <level><operation><permission>
```

Replace **<level>** with the [level of ownership](#) you want to set the *umask* for. Replace **<operation>** with one of the [signs](#). Replace **<permission>** with the [permissions](#) you want to assign. For example, to set the *umask* to **u=rwx,g=rwx,o=rwx**, use **umask -S a=rwx**.

See [User file-creation mode](#) for more details.

**NOTE**

The *umask* is only valid for the current shell session.

26.4. SETTING THE UMASK USING OCTAL VALUES

You can use the **umask** utility with octal values (numbers) to set the *umask* for the current shell session.

Procedure

- To set the *umask* for the current shell session, use:

```
$ umask octal_value
```

Replace *octal_value* with an octal value. See [User file-creation mode mask](#) for more details.

**NOTE**

The *umask* is only valid for the current shell session.

26.5. CHANGING THE DEFAULT UMASK FOR THE NON-LOGIN SHELL

You can change the default **bash** *umask* for standard users by modifying the **/etc/bashrc** file.

Prerequisites

- **root** access

Procedure

1. As **root**, open the **/etc/bashrc** file in the editor.
2. Modify the following sections to set a new default **bash** *umask*:

```
if [ $UID -gt 199 ] && [ "id -gn" = "id -un" ]; then
    umask 002
```

```
else
    umask 022
fi
```

Replace the default octal value of the *umask* (**002**) with another octal value. See [User file-creation mode mask](#) for more details.

3. Save the changes and exit the editor.

26.6. CHANGING THE DEFAULT UMASK FOR THE LOGIN SHELL

You can change the default **bash** *umask* for the **root** user by modifying the `/etc/profile` file.

Prerequisites

- **root** access

Procedure

1. As **root**, open the `/etc/profile` file in the editor.
2. Modify the following sections to set a new default **bash** *umask*:

```
if [ $UID -gt 199 ] && [ "/usr/bin/id -gn" = "/usr/bin/id -un" ]; then
    umask 002
else
    umask 022
fi
```

Replace the default octal value of the *umask* (**022**) with another octal value. See [User file-creation mode mask](#) for more details.

3. Save the changes and exit the editor.

26.7. CHANGING THE DEFAULT UMASK FOR A SPECIFIC USER

You can change the default *umask* for a specific user by modifying the `.bashrc` for that user.

Procedure

- Append the line that specifies the octal value of the *umask* into the `.bashrc` file for the particular user.

```
$ echo 'umask octal_value' >> /home/username/.bashrc
```

Replace *octal_value* with an octal value and replace *username* with the name of the user. See [User file-creation mode mask](#) for more details.

26.8. SETTING DEFAULT PERMISSIONS FOR NEWLY CREATED HOME DIRECTORIES

You can change the permission modes for home directories of newly created users by modifying the `/etc/login.defs` file.

Procedure

1. As **root**, open the **/etc/login.defs** file in the editor.
2. Modify the following section to set a new default *HOME_MODE*:

```
# HOME_MODE is used by useradd(8) and newusers(8) to set the mode for new
# home directories.
# If HOME_MODE is not set, the value of UMASK is used to create the mode.
HOME_MODE    0700
```

Replace the default octal value (**0700**) with another octal value. The selected mode will be used to create the permissions for the home directory.

3. If *HOME_MODE* is set, save the changes and exit the editor.
4. If *HOME_MODE* is not set, modify the *UMASK* to set the mode for the newly created home directories:

```
# Default initial "umask" value used by login(1) on non-PAM enabled systems.
# Default "umask" value for pam_umask(8) on PAM enabled systems.
# UMASK is also used by useradd(8) and newusers(8) to set the mode for new
# home directories if HOME_MODE is not set.
# 022 is the default value, but 027, or even 077, could be considered
# for increased privacy. There is no One True Answer here: each sysadmin
# must make up their mind.

UMASK        022
```

Replace the default octal value (**022**) with another octal value. See [User file-creation mode mask](#) for more details.

5. Save the changes and exit the editor.

CHAPTER 27. USING DNSTAP IN RHEL

The **dnstap** utility provides an advanced way to monitor and log details of incoming name queries. It records sent messages from the **named** service. This section explains how to record DNS queries using **dnstap**.

27.1. RECORDING DNS QUERIES USING DNSTAP IN RHEL

The network administrators can record the DNS queries to collect the website or IP address information along with the domain health.

Prerequisites

- Upgrade **BIND** packages to version **bind-9.11.26-2** or newer.



WARNING

If you already have a **BIND** version installed and running, adding a new version of **BIND** will overwrite the existing version.

Procedure

Following are the steps to record DNS queries:

1. Edit the **/etc/named.conf** file in the **options** block to enable **dnstap** and target file:

```
options
{
# ...

dnstap { all; }; # Configure filter
dnstap-output file "/var/named/data/dnstap.bin";

# ...
};
# end of options
```

(all | auth | client | forwarder | resolver | update) [(query | response)];

The **dnstap** filter contains multiple definitions delimited by a **;** in the **dnstap {}** block.

Following is the syntax for each rule:

- **auth** – Authoritative zone response or answer.
- **client** – Internal client query or answer.
- **forwarder** – Forwarded query or response from it.
- **resolver** – Iterative resolution query or response.

- **update** - Dynamic zone update requests.
- **all** - Any from the above options.
- **query | response** - If no query or response keyword is specified, both would be recorded. The following example requests **auth** responses only, **client queries** and both queries and responses of dynamic **updates**:

Example:

```
dnstap {auth response; client query; update;};
```

2. Configure the periodic rollout for the active logs.
In the following example, the content of the user-edited script run once per day by **cron**. Number 3 signifies the backup log files limited to that number. Because the file gets removed, it never reaches the **.2** suffix.

Example:

```
sudoedit /etc/cron.daily/dnstap
```

```
#!/bin/sh
```

```
rndc dnstap -roll 3
```

```
mv /var/named/data/dnstap.bin.1 \ /var/log/named/dnstap/dnstap-$(date -l).bin
```

```
# use dnstap-read to analyze saved logs
```

```
sudo chmod a+x /etc/cron.daily/dnstap
```

3. Use the **dnstap-read** utility to handle and analyze the logs in a human-readable format.
In the following example, the detailed dnstap output gets printed in the **YAML** file format.

Example:

```
dnstap-read -y [file-name]
```

CHAPTER 28. MANAGING THE ACCESS CONTROL LIST

Each file and directory can only have one user owner and one group owner at a time. If you want to grant a user permissions to access specific files or directories that belong to a different user or group while keeping other files and directories private, you can utilize Linux Access Control Lists (ACLs).

28.1. DISPLAYING THE CURRENT ACCESS CONTROL LIST

You can use the **getfacl** utility to display the current ACL.

Procedure

- To display the current ACL for a particular file or directory, use:

```
$ getfacl file-name
```

Replace *file-name* with the name of the file or directory.

28.2. SETTING THE ACCESS CONTROL LIST

You can use the **setfacl** utility to set the ACL for a file or directory.

Prerequisites

- **root** access.

Procedure

- To set the ACL for a file or directory, use:

```
# setfacl -m u:username:symbolic_value file-name
```

Replace *username* with the name of the user, *symbolic_value* with a symbolic value, and *file-name* with the name of the file or directory. For more information see the **setfacl** man page.

Example 28.1. Modifying permissions for a group project

The following example describes how to modify permissions for the **group-project** file owned by the **root** user that belongs to the **root** group so that this file is:

- Not executable by anyone.
- The user **andrew** has the **rw-** permissions.
- The user **susan** has the **---** permissions.
- Other users have the **r--** permissions.

Procedure

```
# setfacl -m u:andrew:rw- group-project  
# setfacl -m u:susan:--- group-project
```

Verification steps

- To verify that the user **andrew** has the **rw-** permission, the user **susan** has the **---** permission, and other users have the **r--** permission, use:

```
$ getfacl group-project
```

The output returns:

```
# file: group-project
# owner: root
# group: root
user:andrew:rw-
user:susan:---
group::r--
mask::rw-
other::r--
```

CHAPTER 29. USING THE CHRONY SUITE TO CONFIGURE NTP

Accurate timekeeping is important for a number of reasons in IT. In networking for example, accurate time stamps in packets and logs are required. In Linux systems, the **NTP** protocol is implemented by a daemon running in user space.

The user space daemon updates the system clock running in the kernel. The system clock can keep time by using various clock sources. Usually, the *Time Stamp Counter (TSC)* is used. The TSC is a CPU register which counts the number of cycles since it was last reset. It is very fast, has a high resolution, and there are no interruptions.

Starting with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, the **NTP** protocol is implemented by the **chronyd** daemon, available from the repositories in the **chrony** package.

The following sections describe how to use the **chrony** suite to configure NTP.

29.1. INTRODUCTION TO CHRONY SUITE

chrony is an implementation of the **Network Time Protocol (NTP)**. You can use **chrony**:

- To synchronize the system clock with **NTP** servers
- To synchronize the system clock with a reference clock, for example a GPS receiver
- To synchronize the system clock with a manual time input
- As an **NTPv4(RFC 5905)** server or peer to provide a time service to other computers in the network

chrony performs well in a wide range of conditions, including intermittent network connections, heavily congested networks, changing temperatures (ordinary computer clocks are sensitive to temperature), and systems that do not run continuously, or run on a virtual machine.

Typical accuracy between two machines synchronized over the Internet is within a few milliseconds, and for machines on a LAN within tens of microseconds. Hardware timestamping or a hardware reference clock may improve accuracy between two machines synchronized to a sub-microsecond level.

chrony consists of **chronyd**, a daemon that runs in user space, and **chronyc**, a command line program which can be used to monitor the performance of **chronyd** and to change various operating parameters when it is running.

The **chrony** daemon, **chronyd**, can be monitored and controlled by the command line utility **chronyc**. This utility provides a command prompt which allows entering a number of commands to query the current state of **chronyd** and make changes to its configuration. By default, **chronyd** accepts only commands from a local instance of **chronyc**, but it can be configured to accept monitoring commands also from remote hosts. The remote access should be restricted.

29.2. USING CHRONYC TO CONTROL CHRONYD

This section describes how to control **chronyd** using the **chronyc** command line utility.

Procedure

1. To make changes to the local instance of **chronyd** using the command line utility **chronyc** in interactive mode, enter the following command as **root**:

```
# chronyc
```

chronyc must run as **root** if some of the restricted commands are to be used.

The **chronyc** command prompt will be displayed as follows:

```
chronyc>
```

2. To list all of the commands, type **help**.
3. Alternatively, the utility can also be invoked in non-interactive command mode if called together with a command as follows:

chronyc command



NOTE

Changes made using **chronyc** are not permanent, they will be lost after a **chronyd** restart. For permanent changes, modify **/etc/chrony.conf**.

29.3. MIGRATING TO CHRONY

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, users could choose between **ntp** and **chrony** to ensure accurate timekeeping. For differences between **ntp** and **chrony**, **ntpd** and **chronyd**, see [Differences between ntpd and chronyd](#).

Starting with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, **ntp** is no longer supported. **chrony** is enabled by default. For this reason, you might need to migrate from **ntp** to **chrony**.

Migrating from **ntp** to **chrony** is straightforward in most cases. The corresponding names of the programs, configuration files and services are:

Table 29.1. Corresponding names of the programs, configuration files and services when migrating from ntp to chrony

ntp name	chrony name
/etc/ntp.conf	/etc/chrony.conf
/etc/ntp/keys	/etc/chrony.keys
ntpd	chronyd
ntpq	chronyc
ntpd.service	chronyd.service
ntp-wait.service	chrony-wait.service

The **ntpd** and **sntp** utilities, which are included in the **ntp** distribution, can be replaced with **chronyd** using the **-q** option or the **-t** option. The configuration can be specified on the command line to avoid reading **/etc/chrony.conf**. For example, instead of running **ntpd ntp.example.com**, **chronyd** could be started as:

```
# chronyd -q 'server ntp.example.com iburst'
2018-05-18T12:37:43Z chronyd version 3.3 starting (+CMDMON +NTP +REFCLOCK +RTC
+PRIVDROP +SCFILTER +SIGND +ASYNCDNS +SECHASH +IPV6 +DEBUG)
2018-05-18T12:37:43Z Initial frequency -2.630 ppm
2018-05-18T12:37:48Z System clock wrong by 0.003159 seconds (step)
2018-05-18T12:37:48Z chronyd exiting
```

The **ntpstat** utility, which was previously included in the **ntp** package and supported only **ntpd**, now supports both **ntpd** and **chronyd**. It is available in the **ntpstat** package.

29.3.1. Migration script

A Python script called **ntp2chrony.py** is included in the documentation of the **chrony** package (**/usr/share/doc/chrony**). The script automatically converts an existing **ntp** configuration to **chrony**. It supports the most common directives and options in the **ntp.conf** file. Any lines that are ignored in the conversion are included as comments in the generated **chrony.conf** file for review. Keys that are specified in the **ntp** key file, but are not marked as trusted keys in **ntp.conf** are included in the generated **chrony.keys** file as comments.

By default, the script does not overwrite any files. If **/etc/chrony.conf** or **/etc/chrony.keys** already exist, the **-b** option can be used to rename the file as a backup. The script supports other options. The **--help** option prints all supported options.

An example of an invocation of the script with the default **ntp.conf** provided in the **ntp** package is:

```
# python3 /usr/share/doc/chrony/ntp2chrony.py -b -v
Reading /etc/ntp.conf
Reading /etc/ntp/crypto/pw
Reading /etc/ntp/keys
Writing /etc/chrony.conf
Writing /etc/chrony.keys
```

The only directive ignored in this case is **disable monitor**, which has a chrony equivalent in the **noclientlog** directive, but it was included in the default **ntp.conf** only to mitigate an amplification attack.

The generated **chrony.conf** file typically includes a number of **allow** directives corresponding to the restrict lines in **ntp.conf**. If you do not want to run **chronyd** as an **NTP** server, remove all **allow** directives from **chrony.conf**.

CHAPTER 30. USING CHRONY

The following sections describe how to install, start, and stop **chronyd**, and how to check if **chrony** is synchronized. Sections also describe how to manually adjust System Clock.

30.1. MANAGING CHRONY

The following procedure describes how to install, start, stop, and check the status of **chronyd**.

Procedure

1. The **chrony** suite is installed by default on Red Hat Enterprise Linux. To ensure that it is, run the following command as **root**:

```
# yum install chrony
```

The default location for the **chrony** daemon is **/usr/sbin/chronyd**. The command line utility will be installed to **/usr/bin/chronyc**.

2. To check the status of **chronyd**, issue the following command:

```
$ systemctl status chronyd
chronyd.service - NTP client/server
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/chronyd.service; enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Wed 2013-06-12 22:23:16 CEST; 11h ago
```

3. To start **chronyd**, issue the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl start chronyd
```

To ensure **chronyd** starts automatically at system start, issue the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl enable chronyd
```

4. To stop **chronyd**, issue the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl stop chronyd
```

To prevent **chronyd** from starting automatically at system start, issue the following command as **root**:

```
# systemctl disable chronyd
```

30.2. CHECKING IF CHRONY IS SYNCHRONIZED

The following procedure describes how to check if **chrony** is synchronized with the use of the **tracking**, **sources**, and **sourcestats** commands.

Procedure

1. To check **chrony** tracking, issue the following command:

\$ chronyc tracking

```

Reference ID   : CB00710F (foo.example.net)
Stratum       : 3
Ref time (UTC) : Fri Jan 27 09:49:17 2017
System time    : 0.000006523 seconds slow of NTP time
Last offset    : -0.000006747 seconds
RMS offset     : 0.000035822 seconds
Frequency      : 3.225 ppm slow
Residual freq  : 0.000 ppm
Skew           : 0.129 ppm
Root delay     : 0.013639022 seconds
Root dispersion : 0.001100737 seconds
Update interval : 64.2 seconds
Leap status    : Normal

```

- The **sources** command displays information about the current time sources that **chronyd** is accessing. To check **chrony** sources, issue the following command:

\$ chronyc sources

```

210 Number of sources = 3
MS Name/IP address      Stratum Poll Reach LastRx Last sample
=====
====
#* GPS0                  0  4  377  11  -479ns[ -621ns] /- 134ns
^? a.b.c                 2  6  377  23  -923us[ -924us] +/- 43ms
^ d.e.f                  1  6  377  21  -2629us[-2619us] +/- 86ms

```

The optional argument **-v** can be specified, meaning verbose. In this case, extra caption lines are shown as a reminder of the meanings of the columns.

- The **sourcestats** command displays information about the drift rate and offset estimation process for each of the sources currently being examined by **chronyd**. To check **chrony** source statistics, issue the following command:

\$ chronyc sourcestats

```

210 Number of sources = 1
Name/IP Address         NP NR Span Frequency Freq Skew Offset Std Dev
=====
====
abc.def.ghi             11  5 46m  -0.001   0.045   1us  25us

```

The optional argument **-v** can be specified, meaning verbose. In this case, extra caption lines are shown as a reminder of the meanings of the columns.

Additional resources

- **chronyc(1)** man page

30.3. MANUALLY ADJUSTING THE SYSTEM CLOCK

The following procedure describes how to manually adjust the System Clock.

Procedure

1. To step the system clock immediately, bypassing any adjustments in progress by slewing, issue the following command as **root**:

```
# chronyc makestep
```

If the **rtcf** directive is used, the real-time clock should not be manually adjusted. Random adjustments would interfere with **chrony**'s need to measure the rate at which the real-time clock drifts.

30.4. SETTING UP CHRONY FOR A SYSTEM IN AN ISOLATED NETWORK

For a network that is never connected to the Internet, one computer is selected to be the master timeserver. The other computers are either direct clients of the master, or clients of clients. On the master, the drift file must be manually set with the average rate of drift of the system clock. If the master is rebooted, it will obtain the time from surrounding systems and calculate an average to set its system clock. Thereafter it resumes applying adjustments based on the drift file. The drift file will be updated automatically when the **settime** command is used.

The following procedure describes how to set up **chrony** for a system in an isolated network.

Procedure

1. On the system selected to be the master, using a text editor running as **root**, edit **/etc/chrony.conf** as follows:

```
driftfile /var/lib/chrony/drift
commandkey 1
keyfile /etc/chrony.keys
initstepslew 10 client1 client3 client6
local stratum 8
manual
allow 192.0.2.0
```

Where **192.0.2.0** is the network or subnet address from which the clients are allowed to connect.

2. On the systems selected to be direct clients of the master, using a text editor running as **root**, edit the **/etc/chrony.conf** as follows:

```
server master
driftfile /var/lib/chrony/drift
logdir /var/log/chrony
log measurements statistics tracking
keyfile /etc/chrony.keys
commandkey 24
local stratum 10
initstepslew 20 master
allow 192.0.2.123
```

Where **192.0.2.123** is the address of the master, and **master** is the host name of the master. Clients with this configuration will resynchronize the master if it restarts.

On the client systems which are not to be direct clients of the master, the **/etc/chrony.conf** file should be the same except that the **local** and **allow** directives should be omitted.

In an isolated network, you can also use the **local** directive that enables a local reference mode, which allows **chronyd** operating as an **NTP** server to appear synchronized to real time, even when it was never synchronized or the last update of the clock happened a long time ago.

To allow multiple servers in the network to use the same local configuration and to be synchronized to one another, without confusing clients that poll more than one server, use the **orphan** option of the **local** directive which enables the orphan mode. Each server needs to be configured to poll all other servers with **local**. This ensures that only the server with the smallest reference ID has the local reference active and other servers are synchronized to it. When the server fails, another one will take over.

30.5. CONFIGURING REMOTE MONITORING ACCESS

chronyc can access **chronyd** in two ways:

- Internet Protocol, IPv4 or IPv6.
- Unix domain socket, which is accessible locally by the **root** or **chrony** user.

By default, **chronyc** connects to the Unix domain socket. The default path is **/var/run/chrony/chronyd.sock**. If this connection fails, which can happen for example when **chronyc** is running under a non-root user, **chronyc** tries to connect to 127.0.0.1 and then ::1.

Only the following monitoring commands, which do not affect the behavior of **chronyd**, are allowed from the network:

- activity
- manual list
- rtcddata
- smoothing
- sources
- sourcestats
- tracking
- waitsync

The set of hosts from which **chronyd** accepts these commands can be configured with the **cmdallow** directive in the configuration file of **chronyd**, or the **cmdallow** command in **chronyc**. By default, the commands are accepted only from localhost (127.0.0.1 or ::1).

All other commands are allowed only through the Unix domain socket. When sent over the network, **chronyd** responds with a **Not authorised** error, even if it is from localhost.

The following procedure describes how to access **chronyd** remotely with **chronyc**.

Procedure

1. Allow access from both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses by adding the following to the **/etc/chrony.conf** file:

```
bindcmdaddress 0.0.0.0
```

or

```
bindcmdaddress ::
```

2. Allow commands from the remote IP address, network, or subnet by using the **cmdallow** directive.

Add the following content to the **/etc/chrony.conf** file:

```
cmdallow 192.168.1.0/24
```

3. Open port 323 in the firewall to connect from a remote system:

```
# firewall-cmd --zone=public --add-port=323/udp
```

Optionally, you can open port 323 permanently using the **--permanent** option:

```
# firewall-cmd --permanent --zone=public --add-port=323/udp
```

4. If you opened port 323 permanently, reload the firewall configuration:

```
firewall-cmd --reload
```

Additional resources

- **chrony.conf(5)** man page

30.6. MANAGING TIME SYNCHRONIZATION USING RHEL SYSTEM ROLES

You can manage time synchronization on multiple target machines using the **timesync** role. The **timesync** role installs and configures an NTP or PTP implementation to operate as an NTP client or PTP slave in order to synchronize the system clock with NTP servers or grandmasters in PTP domains.

Note that using the **timesync** role also facilitates [migration to chrony](#), because you can use the same playbook on all versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux starting with RHEL 6 regardless of whether the system uses **ntp** or **chrony** to implement the NTP protocol.



WARNING

The **timesync** role replaces the configuration of the given or detected provider service on the managed host. Previous settings are lost, even if they are not specified in the role variables. The only preserved setting is the choice of provider if the **timesync_ntp_provider** variable is not defined.

The following example shows how to apply the **timesync** role in a situation with just one pool of servers.

Example 30.1. An example playbook applying the timesync role for a single pool of servers

```
---
- hosts: timesync-test
  vars:
    timesync_ntp_servers:
      - hostname: 2.rhel.pool.ntp.org
        pool: yes
        iburst: yes
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.timesync
```

For a detailed reference on **timesync** role variables, install the **rhel-system-roles** package, and see the **README.md** or **README.html** files in the `/usr/share/doc/rhel-system-roles/timesync` directory.

Additional resources

- [Preparing a control node and managed nodes to use RHEL System Roles](#)

30.7. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **chronyc(1)** man page
- **chronyd(8)** man page
- [Frequently Asked Questions](#)

CHAPTER 31. CHRONY WITH HW TIMESTAMPING

Hardware timestamping is a feature supported in some Network Interface Controller (NICs) which provides accurate timestamping of incoming and outgoing packets. **NTP** timestamps are usually created by the kernel and **chronyd** with the use of the system clock. However, when HW timestamping is enabled, the NIC uses its own clock to generate the timestamps when packets are entering or leaving the link layer or the physical layer. When used with **NTP**, hardware timestamping can significantly improve the accuracy of synchronization. For best accuracy, both **NTP** servers and **NTP** clients need to use hardware timestamping. Under ideal conditions, a sub-microsecond accuracy may be possible.

Another protocol for time synchronization that uses hardware timestamping is **PTP**.

Unlike **NTP**, **PTP** relies on assistance in network switches and routers. If you want to reach the best accuracy of synchronization, use **PTP** on networks that have switches and routers with **PTP** support, and prefer **NTP** on networks that do not have such switches and routers.

The following sections describe how to:

- Verify support for hardware timestamping
- Enable hardware timestamping
- Configure client polling interval
- Enable interleaved mode
- Configure server for large number of clients
- Verify hardware timestamping
- Configure PTP-NTP bridge

31.1. VERIFYING SUPPORT FOR HARDWARE TIMESTAMPING

To verify that hardware timestamping with **NTP** is supported by an interface, use the **ethtool -T** command. An interface can be used for hardware timestamping with **NTP** if **ethtool** lists the **SOF_TIMESTAMPING_TX_HARDWARE** and **SOF_TIMESTAMPING_TX_SOFTWARE** capabilities and also the **HWTSTAMP_FILTER_ALL** filter mode.

Example 31.1. Verifying support for hardware timestamping on a specific interface

```
# ethtool -T eth0
```

Output:

Timestamping parameters for eth0:

Capabilities:

```
hardware-transmit   (SOF_TIMESTAMPING_TX_HARDWARE)
software-transmit   (SOF_TIMESTAMPING_TX_SOFTWARE)
hardware-receive    (SOF_TIMESTAMPING_RX_HARDWARE)
software-receive    (SOF_TIMESTAMPING_RX_SOFTWARE)
software-system-clock (SOF_TIMESTAMPING_SOFTWARE)
hardware-raw-clock  (SOF_TIMESTAMPING_RAW_HARDWARE)
```

PTP Hardware Clock: 0

Hardware Transmit Timestamp Modes:

```

off          (HWTSTAMP_TX_OFF)
on           (HWTSTAMP_TX_ON)
Hardware Receive Filter Modes:
none         (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_NONE)
all          (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_ALL)
ptpv1-l4-sync      (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V1_L4_SYNC)
ptpv1-l4-delay-req (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V1_L4_DELAY_REQ)
ptpv2-l4-sync      (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V2_L4_SYNC)
ptpv2-l4-delay-req (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V2_L4_DELAY_REQ)
ptpv2-l2-sync      (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V2_L2_SYNC)
ptpv2-l2-delay-req (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V2_L2_DELAY_REQ)
ptpv2-event        (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V2_EVENT)
ptpv2-sync         (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V2_SYNC)
ptpv2-delay-req    (HWTSTAMP_FILTER_PTP_V2_DELAY_REQ)

```

31.2. ENABLING HARDWARE TIMESTAMPING

To enable hardware timestamping, use the **hwtimestamp** directive in the **/etc/chrony.conf** file. The directive can either specify a single interface, or a wildcard character can be used to enable hardware timestamping on all interfaces that support it. Use the wildcard specification in case that no other application, like **ptp4l** from the **linuxptp** package, is using hardware timestamping on an interface. Multiple **hwtimestamp** directives are allowed in the chrony configuration file.

Example 31.2. Enabling hardware timestamping by using the hwtimestamp directive

```

hwtimestamp eth0
hwtimestamp eth1
hwtimestamp *

```

31.3. CONFIGURING CLIENT POLLING INTERVAL

The default range of a polling interval (64-1024 seconds) is recommended for servers on the Internet. For local servers and hardware timestamping, a shorter polling interval needs to be configured in order to minimize offset of the system clock.

The following directive in **/etc/chrony.conf** specifies a local **NTP** server using one second polling interval:

```
server ntp.local minpoll 0 maxpoll 0
```

31.4. ENABLING INTERLEAVED MODE

NTP servers that are not hardware **NTP** appliances, but rather general purpose computers running a software **NTP** implementation, like **chrony**, will get a hardware transmit timestamp only after sending a packet. This behavior prevents the server from saving the timestamp in the packet to which it corresponds. In order to enable **NTP** clients receiving transmit timestamps that were generated after the transmission, configure the clients to use the **NTP** interleaved mode by adding the **xleave** option to the server directive in **/etc/chrony.conf**:

```
server ntp.local minpoll 0 maxpoll 0 xleave
```

31.5. CONFIGURING SERVER FOR LARGE NUMBER OF CLIENTS

The default server configuration allows a few thousands of clients at most to use the interleaved mode concurrently. To configure the server for a larger number of clients, increase the **clientloglimit** directive in **/etc/chrony.conf**. This directive specifies the maximum size of memory allocated for logging of clients' access on the server:

```
clientloglimit 100000000
```

31.6. VERIFYING HARDWARE TIMESTAMPING

To verify that the interface has successfully enabled hardware timestamping, check the system log. The log should contain a message from **chronyd** for each interface with successfully enabled hardware timestamping.

Example 31.3. Log messages for interfaces with enabled hardware timestamping

```
chronyd[4081]: Enabled HW timestamping on eth0
chronyd[4081]: Enabled HW timestamping on eth1
```

When **chronyd** is configured as an **NTP** client or peer, you can have the transmit and receive timestamping modes and the interleaved mode reported for each **NTP** source by the **chronyc ntpdata** command:

Example 31.4. Reporting the transmit, receive timestamping and interleaved mode for each NTP source

```
# chronyc ntpdata
```

Output:

```
Remote address : 203.0.113.15 (CB00710F)
Remote port   : 123
Local address  : 203.0.113.74 (CB00714A)
Leap status   : Normal
Version       : 4
Mode          : Server
Stratum       : 1
Poll interval : 0 (1 seconds)
Precision     : -24 (0.000000060 seconds)
Root delay    : 0.000015 seconds
Root dispersion : 0.000015 seconds
Reference ID   : 47505300 (GPS)
Reference time : Wed May 03 13:47:45 2017
Offset        : -0.000000134 seconds
Peer delay     : 0.000005396 seconds
Peer dispersion : 0.000002329 seconds
Response time  : 0.000152073 seconds
Jitter asymmetry: +0.00
NTP tests      : 111 111 1111
Interleaved    : Yes
Authenticated  : No
```

```
TX timestamping : Hardware
RX timestamping : Hardware
Total TX       : 27
Total RX       : 27
Total valid RX : 27
```

Example 31.5. Reporting the stability of NTP measurements

```
# chronyc sourcestats
```

With hardware timestamping enabled, stability of **NTP** measurements should be in tens or hundreds of nanoseconds, under normal load. This stability is reported in the **Std Dev** column of the output of the **chronyc sourcestats** command:

Output:

```
210 Number of sources = 1
Name/IP Address      NP NR Span Frequency Freq Skew Offset Std Dev
ntp.local            12 7 11 +0.000 0.019 +0ns 49ns
```

31.7. CONFIGURING PTP-NTP BRIDGE

If a highly accurate Precision Time Protocol (**PTP**) grandmaster is available in a network that does not have switches or routers with **PTP** support, a computer may be dedicated to operate as a **PTP** slave and a stratum-1 **NTP** server. Such a computer needs to have two or more network interfaces, and be close to the grandmaster or have a direct connection to it. This will ensure highly accurate synchronization in the network.

Configure the **ptp4l** and **phc2sys** programs from the **linuxptp** packages to use one interface to synchronize the system clock using **PTP**.

Configure **chronyd** to provide the system time using the other interface:

Example 31.6. Configuring chronyd to provide the system time using the other interface

```
bindaddress 203.0.113.74
hwtimestamp eth1
local stratum 1
```

CHAPTER 32. ACHIEVING SOME SETTINGS PREVIOUSLY SUPPORTED BY NTP IN CHRONY

Some settings that were in previous major version of Red Hat Enterprise Linux supported by **ntp**, are not supported by **chrony**. The following sections list such settings, and describe ways to achieve them on a system with **chrony**.

32.1. MONITORING BY NTPQ AND NTPDC

chrony cannot be monitored by the **ntpq** and **ntpdc** utilities from the **ntp** distribution, because **chrony** does not support the **NTP** modes 6 and 7. It supports a different protocol and **chronyc** is the client implementation. For more information, see the **chronyc(1)** man page.

To monitor the status of the system clock synchronized by **chronyd**, you can:

- Use the tracking command
- Use the **ntpstat** utility, which supports **chrony** and provides a similar output as it used to with **ntpd**

Example 32.1. Using the tracking command

```
$ chronyc -n tracking
Reference ID   : 0A051B0A (10.5.27.10)
Stratum       : 2
Ref time (UTC) : Thu Mar 08 15:46:20 2018
System time    : 0.000000338 seconds slow of NTP time
Last offset    : +0.000339408 seconds
RMS offset     : 0.000339408 seconds
Frequency      : 2.968 ppm slow
Residual freq  : +0.001 ppm
Skew           : 3.336 ppm
Root delay     : 0.157559142 seconds
Root dispersion : 0.001339232 seconds
Update interval : 64.5 seconds
Leap status    : Normal
```

Example 32.2. Using the ntpstat utility

```
$ ntpstat
synchronised to NTP server (10.5.27.10) at stratum 2
time correct to within 80 ms
polling server every 64 s
```

32.2. USING AUTHENTICATION MECHANISM BASED ON PUBLIC KEY CRYPTOGRAPHY

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, **ntp** supported **Autokey**, which is an authentication mechanism based on public key cryptography.

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, **chronyd** supports Network Time Security (NTS), a modern secure authentication mechanism, instead of **Autokey**. For more information, see [Overview of Network Time Security \(NTS\) in chrony](#).

32.3. USING EPHEMERAL SYMMETRIC ASSOCIATIONS

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7, **ntpd** supported ephemeral symmetric associations, which can be mobilized by packets from peers which are not specified in the **ntp.conf** configuration file. In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, **chronyd** needs all peers to be specified in **chrony.conf**. Ephemeral symmetric associations are not supported.

Note that using the client/server mode enabled by the **server** or **pool** directive is more secure compared to the symmetric mode enabled by the **peer** directive.

32.4. MULTICAST/BROADCAST CLIENT

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 supported the broadcast/multicast **NTP** mode, which simplifies configuration of clients. With this mode, clients can be configured to just listen for packets sent to a multicast/broadcast address instead of listening for specific names or addresses of individual servers, which may change over time.

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, **chronyd** does not support the broadcast/multicast mode. The main reason is that it is less accurate and less secure than the ordinary client/server and symmetric modes.

There are several options of migration from an **NTP** broadcast/multicast setup:

- Configure DNS to translate a single name, such as `ntp.example.com`, to multiple addresses of different servers
Clients can have a static configuration using only a single **pool** directive to synchronize with multiple servers. If a server from the pool becomes unreachable, or otherwise unsuitable for synchronization, the clients automatically replace it with another server from the pool.
- Distribute the list of **NTP** servers over DHCP
When NetworkManager gets a list of **NTP** servers from the DHCP server, **chronyd** is automatically configured to use them. This feature can be disabled by adding **PEERNTP=no** to the `/etc/sysconfig/network` file.
- Use the **Precision Time Protocol (PTP)**
This option is suitable mainly for environments where servers change frequently, or if a larger group of clients needs to be able to synchronize to each other without having a designated server.

PTP was designed for multicast messaging and works similarly to the **NTP** broadcast mode. A **PTP** implementation is available in the **linuxptp** package.

PTP normally requires hardware timestamping and support in network switches to perform well. However, **PTP** is expected to work better than **NTP** in the broadcast mode even with software timestamping and no support in network switches.

In networks with very large number of **PTP** slaves in one communication path, it is recommended to configure the **PTP** slaves with the **hybrid_e2e** option in order to reduce the amount of network traffic generated by the slaves. You can configure a computer running **chronyd** as an **NTP** client, and possibly **NTP** server, to operate also as a **PTP** grandmaster to distribute synchronized time to a large number of computers using multicast messaging.

CHAPTER 33. OVERVIEW OF NETWORK TIME SECURITY (NTS) IN CHRONY

Network Time Security (NTS) is an authentication mechanism for Network Time Protocol (NTP), designed to scale substantial clients. It verifies that the packets received from the server machines are unaltered while moving to the client machine. Network Time Security (NTS) includes a Key Establishment (NTS-KE) protocol that automatically creates the encryption keys used between the server and its clients.

33.1. ENABLING NETWORK TIME SECURITY (NTS) IN THE CLIENT CONFIGURATION FILE

By default, Network Time Security (NTS) is not enabled. You can enable NTS in the **/etc/chrony.conf**. For that, perform the following steps:

Prerequisites

- Server with the NTS support

Procedure

In the client configuration file:

1. Specify the server with the **nts** option in addition to the recommended **iburst** option.

```
For example:
server time.example.com iburst nts
server nts.netnod.se iburst nts
server ptbtime1.ptb.de iburst nts
```

2. To avoid repeating the Network Time Security-Key Establishment (NTS-KE) session during system boot, add the following line to **chrony.conf**, if it is not present:

```
ntsdumpdir /var/lib/chrony
```

3. Add the following line to **/etc/sysconfig/network** to disable synchronization with Network Time Protocol (NTP) servers provided by **DHCP**:

```
PEERNTP=no
```

4. Save your changes.
5. Restart the **chronyd** service:

```
systemctl restart chronyd
```

Verification

- Verify if the **NTS** keys were successfully established:

```
# chronyc -N authdata
```

```
Name/IP address  Mode KeyID Type KLen Last Atmp  NAK Cook CLen
```

```
=====
time.example.com NTS   1 15 256 33m  0  0  8 100
nts.sth1.ntp.se  NTS   1 15 256 33m  0  0  8 100
nts.sth2.ntp.se  NTS   1 15 256 33m  0  0  8 100
```

The **KeyID**, **Type**, and **KLen** should have non-zero values. If the value is zero, check the system log for error messages from **chronyd**.

- Verify the client is making NTP measurements:

```
# chronyc -N sources
```

```
MS Name/IP address Stratum Poll Reach LastRx Last sample
```

```
=====
time.example.com 3      6 377 45 +355us[ +375us] +/- 11ms
nts.sth1.ntp.se  1      6 377 44 +237us[ +237us] +/- 23ms
nts.sth2.ntp.se  1      6 377 44 -170us[ -170us] +/- 22ms
```

The **Reach** column should have a non-zero value; ideally 377. If the value rarely gets 377 or never gets to 377, it indicates that NTP requests or responses are getting lost in the network.

Additional resources

- **chrony.conf(5)** man page

33.2. ENABLING NETWORK TIME SECURITY (NTS) ON THE SERVER

If you run your own Network Time Protocol (NTP) server, you can enable the server Network Time Security (NTS) support to facilitate its clients to synchronize securely.

If the NTP server is a client of other servers, that is, it is not a Stratum 1 server, it should use NTS or symmetric key for its synchronization.

Prerequisites

- Server private key in **PEM** format
- Server certificate with required intermediate certificates in **PEM** format

Procedure

1. Specify the private key and the certificate file in **chrony.conf**

For example:

```
ntsserverkey /etc/pki/tls/private/foo.example.net.key
ntsservercert /etc/pki/tls/certs/foo.example.net.crt
```

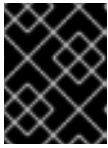
2. Ensure that both the key and certificate files are readable by the chrony system user, by setting the group ownership.

For example:

```
chown :chrony /etc/pki/tls/*/foo.example.net.*
```


3. Ensure the **ntsdumpdir /var/lib/chrony** directive is present in the **chrony.conf**.
4. Restart the **chronyd** service:

```
systemctl restart chronyd
```



IMPORTANT

If the server has a firewall, it needs to allow both the **UDP 123** and **TCP 4460** ports for NTP and Network Time Security-Key Establishment (NTS-KE).

Verification

- Perform a quick test from a client machine with the following command:

```
$ chronyd -Q -t 3 'server
```

```
foo.example.net iburst nts maxsamples 1'
```

```
2021-09-15T13:45:26Z chronyd version 4.1 starting (+CMDMON +NTP +REFCLOCK +RTC
+PRIVDROP +SCFILTER +SIGND +ASYNCDNS +NTS +SECHASH +IPV6 +DEBUG)
```

```
2021-09-15T13:45:26Z Disabled control of system clock
```

```
2021-09-15T13:45:28Z System clock wrong by 0.002205 seconds (ignored)
```

```
2021-09-15T13:45:28Z chronyd exiting
```

The **System clock wrong** message indicates the NTP server is accepting NTS-KE connections and responding with NTS-protected NTP messages.

- Verify the NTS-KE connections and authenticated NTP packets observed on the server:

```
# chronyc serverstats
```

```
NTP packets received      : 7
```

```
NTP packets dropped       : 0
```

```
Command packets received  : 22
```

```
Command packets dropped   : 0
```

```
Client log records dropped : 0
```

```
NTS-KE connections accepted: 1
```

```
NTS-KE connections dropped : 0
```

```
Authenticated NTP packets: 7
```

If the value of the **NTS-KE connections accepted** and **Authenticated NTP packets** field is a non-zero value, it means that at least one client was able to connect to the NTS-KE port and send an authenticated NTP request.

CHAPTER 34. USING SECURE COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN TWO SYSTEMS WITH OPENSSH

SSH (Secure Shell) is a protocol which provides secure communications between two systems using a client-server architecture and allows users to log in to server host systems remotely. Unlike other remote communication protocols, such as FTP or Telnet, SSH encrypts the login session, which prevents intruders to collect unencrypted passwords from the connection.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux includes the basic **OpenSSH** packages: the general **openssh** package, the **openssh-server** package and the **openssh-clients** package. Note that the **OpenSSH** packages require the **OpenSSL** package **openssl-libs**, which installs several important cryptographic libraries that enable **OpenSSH** to provide encrypted communications.

34.1. SSH AND OPENSSH

SSH (Secure Shell) is a program for logging into a remote machine and executing commands on that machine. The SSH protocol provides secure encrypted communications between two untrusted hosts over an insecure network. You can also forward X11 connections and arbitrary TCP/IP ports over the secure channel.

The SSH protocol mitigates security threats, such as interception of communication between two systems and impersonation of a particular host, when you use it for remote shell login or file copying. This is because the SSH client and server use digital signatures to verify their identities. Additionally, all communication between the client and server systems is encrypted.

A host key authenticates hosts in the SSH protocol. Host keys are cryptographic keys that are generated automatically when OpenSSH is first installed, or when the host boots for the first time.

OpenSSH is an implementation of the SSH protocol supported by Linux, UNIX, and similar operating systems. It includes the core files necessary for both the OpenSSH client and server. The OpenSSH suite consists of the following user-space tools:

- **ssh** is a remote login program (SSH client).
- **sshd** is an OpenSSH SSH daemon.
- **scp** is a secure remote file copy program.
- **sftp** is a secure file transfer program.
- **ssh-agent** is an authentication agent for caching private keys.
- **ssh-add** adds private key identities to **ssh-agent**.
- **ssh-keygen** generates, manages, and converts authentication keys for **ssh**.
- **ssh-copy-id** is a script that adds local public keys to the **authorized_keys** file on a remote SSH server.
- **ssh-keyscan** gathers SSH public host keys.

Two versions of SSH currently exist: version 1, and the newer version 2. The OpenSSH suite in RHEL supports only SSH version 2. It has an enhanced key-exchange algorithm that is not vulnerable to exploits known in version 1.

OpenSSH, as one of core cryptographic subsystems of RHEL, uses system-wide crypto policies. This

ensures that weak cipher suites and cryptographic algorithms are disabled in the default configuration. To modify the policy, the administrator must either use the **update-crypto-policies** command to adjust the settings or manually opt out of the system-wide crypto policies.

The OpenSSH suite uses two sets of configuration files: one for client programs (that is, **ssh**, **scp**, and **sftp**), and another for the server (the **sshd** daemon).

System-wide SSH configuration information is stored in the **/etc/ssh/** directory. User-specific SSH configuration information is stored in **~/.ssh/** in the user's home directory. For a detailed list of OpenSSH configuration files, see the **FILES** section in the **sshd(8)** man page.

Additional resources

- Man pages listed by using the **man -k ssh** command
- [Using system-wide cryptographic policies](#)

34.2. CONFIGURING AND STARTING AN OPENSSH SERVER

Use the following procedure for a basic configuration that might be required for your environment and for starting an OpenSSH server. Note that after the default RHEL installation, the **sshd** daemon is already started and server host keys are automatically created.

Prerequisites

- The **openssh-server** package is installed.

Procedure

1. Start the **sshd** daemon in the current session and set it to start automatically at boot time:

```
# systemctl start sshd
# systemctl enable sshd
```

2. To specify different addresses than the default **0.0.0.0** (IPv4) or **::** (IPv6) for the **ListenAddress** directive in the **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** configuration file and to use a slower dynamic network configuration, add the dependency on the **network-online.target** target unit to the **sshd.service** unit file. To achieve this, create the **/etc/systemd/system/sshd.service.d/local.conf** file with the following content:

```
[Unit]
Wants=network-online.target
After=network-online.target
```

3. Review if OpenSSH server settings in the **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** configuration file meet the requirements of your scenario.
4. Optionally, change the welcome message that your OpenSSH server displays before a client authenticates by editing the **/etc/issue** file, for example:

```
Welcome to ssh-server.example.com
Warning: By accessing this server, you agree to the referenced terms and conditions.
```

Ensure that the **Banner** option is not commented out in **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** and its value contains **/etc/issue**:

```
# less /etc/ssh/sshd_config | grep Banner
Banner /etc/issue
```

Note that to change the message displayed after a successful login you have to edit the **/etc/motd** file on the server. See the **pam_motd** man page for more information.

5. Reload the **systemd** configuration and restart **sshd** to apply the changes:

```
# systemctl daemon-reload
# systemctl restart sshd
```

Verification

1. Check that the **sshd** daemon is running:

```
# systemctl status sshd
● sshd.service - OpenSSH server daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/sshd.service; enabled; vendor preset: enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Mon 2019-11-18 14:59:58 CET; 6min ago
     Docs: man:sshd(8)
           man:sshd_config(5)
   Main PID: 1149 (sshd)
    Tasks: 1 (limit: 11491)
   Memory: 1.9M
   CGroup: /system.slice/sshd.service
           └─1149 /usr/sbin/sshd -D -oCiphers=aes128-ctr,aes256-ctr,aes128-cbc,aes256-cbc -
             oMACs=hmac-sha2-256,>

Nov 18 14:59:58 ssh-server-example.com systemd[1]: Starting OpenSSH server daemon...
Nov 18 14:59:58 ssh-server-example.com sshd[1149]: Server listening on 0.0.0.0 port 22.
Nov 18 14:59:58 ssh-server-example.com sshd[1149]: Server listening on :: port 22.
Nov 18 14:59:58 ssh-server-example.com systemd[1]: Started OpenSSH server daemon.
```

2. Connect to the SSH server with an SSH client.

```
# ssh user@ssh-server-example.com
ECDSA key fingerprint is SHA256:dXbaS0RG/UzITtku8GtXSz0S1++IPegSy31v3L/FAEc.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no/[fingerprint])? yes
Warning: Permanently added 'ssh-server-example.com' (ECDSA) to the list of known hosts.

user@ssh-server-example.com's password:
```

Additional resources

- **sshd(8)** and **sshd_config(5)** man pages.

34.3. SETTING AN OPENSSH SERVER FOR KEY-BASED AUTHENTICATION

To improve system security, enforce key-based authentication by disabling password authentication on your OpenSSH server.

Prerequisites

- The **openssh-server** package is installed.
- The **sshd** daemon is running on the server.

Procedure

1. Open the **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** configuration in a text editor, for example:

```
# vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config
```

2. Change the **PasswordAuthentication** option to **no**:

```
PasswordAuthentication no
```

On a system other than a new default installation, check that **PubkeyAuthentication no** has not been set and the **ChallengeResponseAuthentication** directive is set to **no**. If you are connected remotely, not using console or out-of-band access, test the key-based login process before disabling password authentication.

3. To use key-based authentication with NFS-mounted home directories, enable the **use_nfs_home_dirs** SELinux boolean:

```
# setsebool -P use_nfs_home_dirs 1
```

4. Reload the **sshd** daemon to apply the changes:

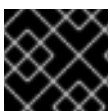
```
# systemctl reload sshd
```

Additional resources

- **sshd(8)**, **sshd_config(5)**, and **setsebool(8)** man pages.

34.4. GENERATING SSH KEY PAIRS

Use this procedure to generate an SSH key pair on a local system and to copy the generated public key to an OpenSSH server. If the server is configured accordingly, you can log in to the OpenSSH server without providing any password.



IMPORTANT

If you complete the following steps as **root**, only **root** is able to use the keys.

Procedure

1. To generate an ECDSA key pair for version 2 of the SSH protocol:

```
$ ssh-keygen -t ecdsa
Generating public/private ecdsa key pair.
```

```

Enter file in which to save the key (/home/joeseec/.ssh/id_ecdsa):
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /home/joeseec/.ssh/id_ecdsa.
Your public key has been saved in /home/joeseec/.ssh/id_ecdsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
SHA256:Q/x+qms4j7PCQ0qFd09iZEFHA+SqwBKRNauU72oZfaCI
joeseec@localhost.example.com
The key's randomart image is:
+---[ECDSA 256]---+
|.00..0=++      |
|.. 0 .00 .     |
|. .. 0. 0      |
|...0.+...      |
|0.00.0 +S .    |
|.=.+ .0        |
|E.*+ . . .     |
|.=.+ +.. 0     |
| . 00*+0.      |
+----[SHA256]-----+

```

You can also generate an RSA key pair by using the **-t rsa** option with the **ssh-keygen** command or an Ed25519 key pair by entering the **ssh-keygen -t ed25519** command.

2. To copy the public key to a remote machine:

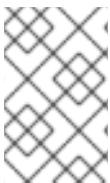
```

$ ssh-copy-id joeseec@ssh-server-example.com
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: attempting to log in with the new key(s), to filter out any that are
already installed
joeseec@ssh-server-example.com's password:
...
Number of key(s) added: 1

```

Now try logging into the machine, with: "ssh 'joeseec@ssh-server-example.com'" and check to make sure that only the key(s) you wanted were added.

If you do not use the **ssh-agent** program in your session, the previous command copies the most recently modified **~/.ssh/id*.pub** public key if it is not yet installed. To specify another public-key file or to prioritize keys in files over keys cached in memory by **ssh-agent**, use the **ssh-copy-id** command with the **-i** option.



NOTE

If you reinstall your system and want to keep previously generated key pairs, back up the **~/.ssh/** directory. After reinstalling, copy it back to your home directory. You can do this for all users on your system, including **root**.

Verification

1. Log in to the OpenSSH server without providing any password:

```

$ ssh joeseec@ssh-server-example.com
Welcome message.
...
Last login: Mon Nov 18 18:28:42 2019 from ::1

```

Additional resources

- **ssh-keygen(1)** and **ssh-copy-id(1)** man pages.

34.5. USING SSH KEYS STORED ON A SMART CARD

Red Hat Enterprise Linux enables you to use RSA and ECDSA keys stored on a smart card on OpenSSH clients. Use this procedure to enable authentication using a smart card instead of using a password.

Prerequisites

- On the client side, the **opensc** package is installed and the **pcscd** service is running.

Procedure

1. List all keys provided by the OpenSC PKCS #11 module including their PKCS #11 URIs and save the output to the *keys.pub* file:

```
$ ssh-keygen -D pkcs11: > keys.pub
$ ssh-keygen -D pkcs11:
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1yc2E...KKZMzcQZzx
pkcs11:id=%02;object=SIGN%20pubkey;token=SSH%20key;manufacturer=piv_II?module-
path=/usr/lib64/pkcs11/opensc-pkcs11.so
ecdsa-sha2-nistp256 AAA...J0hkYnnsM=
pkcs11:id=%01;object=PIV%20AUTH%20pubkey;token=SSH%20key;manufacturer=piv_II?
module-path=/usr/lib64/pkcs11/opensc-pkcs11.so
```

2. To enable authentication using a smart card on a remote server (*example.com*), transfer the public key to the remote server. Use the **ssh-copy-id** command with *keys.pub* created in the previous step:

```
$ ssh-copy-id -f -i keys.pub username@example.com
```

3. To connect to *example.com* using the ECDSA key from the output of the **ssh-keygen -D** command in step 1, you can use just a subset of the URI, which uniquely references your key, for example:

```
$ ssh -i "pkcs11:id=%01?module-path=/usr/lib64/pkcs11/opensc-pkcs11.so" example.com
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[example.com] $
```

4. You can use the same URI string in the *~/.ssh/config* file to make the configuration permanent:

```
$ cat ~/.ssh/config
IdentityFile "pkcs11:id=%01?module-path=/usr/lib64/pkcs11/opensc-pkcs11.so"
$ ssh example.com
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[example.com] $
```

Because OpenSSH uses the **p11-kit-proxy** wrapper and the OpenSC PKCS #11 module is registered to PKCS#11 Kit, you can simplify the previous commands:

```
$ ssh -i "pkcs11:id=%01" example.com
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[example.com] $
```

If you skip the **id=** part of a PKCS #11 URI, OpenSSH loads all keys that are available in the proxy module. This can reduce the amount of typing required:

```
$ ssh -i pkcs11: example.com
Enter PIN for 'SSH key':
[example.com] $
```

Additional resources

- [Fedora 28: Better smart card support in OpenSSH](#)
- **p11-kit(8)**, **opensc.conf(5)**, **pcscd(8)**, **ssh(1)**, and **ssh-keygen(1)** man pages

34.6. MAKING OPENSSH MORE SECURE

The following tips help you to increase security when using OpenSSH. Note that changes in the **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** OpenSSH configuration file require reloading the **sshd** daemon to take effect:

```
# systemctl reload sshd
```



IMPORTANT

The majority of security hardening configuration changes reduce compatibility with clients that do not support up-to-date algorithms or cipher suites.

Disabling insecure connection protocols

- To make SSH truly effective, prevent the use of insecure connection protocols that are replaced by the OpenSSH suite. Otherwise, a user's password might be protected using SSH for one session only to be captured later when logging in using Telnet. For this reason, consider disabling insecure protocols, such as telnet, rsh, rlogin, and ftp.

Enabling key-based authentication and disabling password-based authentication

- Disabling passwords for authentication and allowing only key pairs reduces the attack surface and it also might save users' time. On clients, generate key pairs using the **ssh-keygen** tool and use the **ssh-copy-id** utility to copy public keys from clients on the OpenSSH server. To disable password-based authentication on your OpenSSH server, edit **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** and change the **PasswordAuthentication** option to **no**:

```
PasswordAuthentication no
```

Key types

- Although the **ssh-keygen** command generates a pair of RSA keys by default, you can instruct it to generate ECDSA or Ed25519 keys by using the **-t** option. The ECDSA (Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm) offers better performance than RSA at the equivalent symmetric key

strength. It also generates shorter keys. The Ed25519 public-key algorithm is an implementation of twisted Edwards curves that is more secure and also faster than RSA, DSA, and ECDSA. OpenSSH creates RSA, ECDSA, and Ed25519 server host keys automatically if they are missing. To configure the host key creation in RHEL, use the **sshd-keygen@.service** instantiated service. For example, to disable the automatic creation of the RSA key type:

```
# systemctl mask sshd-keygen@rsa.service
```

- To exclude particular key types for SSH connections, comment out the relevant lines in **/etc/ssh/sshd_config**, and reload the **sshd** service. For example, to allow only Ed25519 host keys:

```
# HostKey /etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key
# HostKey /etc/ssh/ssh_host_ecdsa_key
HostKey /etc/ssh/ssh_host_ed25519_key
```

Non-default port

- By default, the **sshd** daemon listens on TCP port 22. Changing the port reduces the exposure of the system to attacks based on automated network scanning and thus increase security through obscurity. You can specify the port using the **Port** directive in the **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** configuration file. You also have to update the default SELinux policy to allow the use of a non-default port. To do so, use the **semanage** tool from the **policycoreutils-python-utils** package:

```
# semanage port -a -t ssh_port_t -p tcp port_number
```

Furthermore, update **firewalld** configuration:

```
# firewall-cmd --add-port port_number/tcp
# firewall-cmd --runtime-to-permanent
```

In the previous commands, replace *port_number* with the new port number specified using the **Port** directive.

No root login

- If your particular use case does not require the possibility of logging in as the root user, you should consider setting the **PermitRootLogin** configuration directive to **no** in the **/etc/ssh/sshd_config** file. By disabling the possibility of logging in as the root user, the administrator can audit which users run what privileged commands after they log in as regular users and then gain root rights. Alternatively, set **PermitRootLogin** to **prohibit-password**:

```
PermitRootLogin prohibit-password
```

This enforces the use of key-based authentication instead of the use of passwords for logging in as root and reduces risks by preventing brute-force attacks.

Using the X Security extension

- The X server in Red Hat Enterprise Linux clients does not provide the X Security extension. Therefore, clients cannot request another security layer when connecting to untrusted SSH

servers with X11 forwarding. Most applications are not able to run with this extension enabled anyway.

By default, the **ForwardX11Trusted** option in the `/etc/ssh/ssh_config.d/05-redhat.conf` file is set to **yes**, and there is no difference between the **ssh -X remote_machine** (untrusted host) and **ssh -Y remote_machine** (trusted host) command.

If your scenario does not require the X11 forwarding feature at all, set the **X11Forwarding** directive in the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` configuration file to **no**.

Restricting access to specific users, groups, or domains

- The **AllowUsers** and **AllowGroups** directives in the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` configuration file server enable you to permit only certain users, domains, or groups to connect to your OpenSSH server. You can combine **AllowUsers** and **AllowGroups** to restrict access more precisely, for example:

```
AllowUsers *@192.168.1.*,*@10.0.0.*,!*@192.168.1.2
AllowGroups example-group
```

The previous configuration lines accept connections from all users from systems in 192.168.1.* and 10.0.0.* subnets except from the system with the 192.168.1.2 address. All users must be in the **example-group** group. The OpenSSH server denies all other connections.

Note that using allowlists (directives starting with **Allow**) is more secure than using blocklists (options starting with **Deny**) because allowlists block also new unauthorized users or groups.

Changing system-wide cryptographic policies

- OpenSSH uses RHEL system-wide cryptographic policies, and the default system-wide cryptographic policy level offers secure settings for current threat models. To make your cryptographic settings more strict, change the current policy level:

```
# update-crypto-policies --set FUTURE
Setting system policy to FUTURE
```

- To opt-out of the system-wide crypto policies for your OpenSSH server, uncomment the line with the **CRYPTO_POLICY=** variable in the `/etc/sysconfig/sshd` file. After this change, values that you specify in the **Ciphers**, **MACs**, **KexAlgorithms**, and **GSSAPIKexAlgorithms** sections in the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file are not overridden. Note that this task requires deep expertise in configuring cryptographic options.
- See [Using system-wide cryptographic policies](#) in the [Security hardening](#) title for more information.

Additional resources

- **sshd_config(5)**, **ssh-keygen(1)**, **crypto-policies(7)**, and **update-crypto-policies(8)** man pages.

34.7. CONNECTING TO A REMOTE SERVER USING AN SSH JUMP HOST

Use this procedure for connecting your local system to a remote server through an intermediary server, also called jump host.

Prerequisites

- A jump host accepts SSH connections from your local system.
- A remote server accepts SSH connections only from the jump host.

Procedure

1. Define the jump host by editing the `~/.ssh/config` file on your local system, for example:

```
Host jump-server1
  HostName jump1.example.com
```

- The **Host** parameter defines a name or alias for the host you can use in **ssh** commands. The value can match the real host name, but can also be any string.
 - The **HostName** parameter sets the actual host name or IP address of the jump host.
2. Add the remote server jump configuration with the **ProxyJump** directive to `~/.ssh/config` file on your local system, for example:

```
Host remote-server
  HostName remote1.example.com
  ProxyJump jump-server1
```

3. Use your local system to connect to the remote server through the jump server:

```
$ ssh remote-server
```

The previous command is equivalent to the **ssh -J jump-server1 remote-server** command if you omit the configuration steps 1 and 2.

NOTE

You can specify more jump servers and you can also skip adding host definitions to the configurations file when you provide their complete host names, for example:

```
$ ssh -J jump1.example.com,jump2.example.com,jump3.example.com
remote1.example.com
```

Change the host name-only notation in the previous command if the user names or SSH ports on the jump servers differ from the names and ports on the remote server, for example:

```
$ ssh -J
johndoe@jump1.example.com:75,johndoe@jump2.example.com:75,johndoe@jump3.e
xample.com:75 joesec@remote1.example.com:220
```

Additional resources

- **ssh_config(5)** and **ssh(1)** man pages.

34.8. CONNECTING TO REMOTE MACHINES WITH SSH KEYS USING SSH-AGENT

To avoid entering a passphrase each time you initiate an SSH connection, you can use the **ssh-agent** utility to cache the private SSH key. The private key and the passphrase remain secure.

Prerequisites

- You have a remote host with SSH daemon running and reachable through the network.
- You know the IP address or hostname and credentials to log in to the remote host.
- You have generated an SSH key pair with a passphrase and transferred the public key to the remote machine.

For more information, see [Generating SSH key pairs](#).

Procedure

1. Optional: Verify you can use the key to authenticate to the remote host:

- a. Connect to the remote host using SSH:

```
$ ssh example.user1@198.51.100.1 hostname
```

- b. Enter the passphrase you set while creating the key to grant access to the private key.

```
$ ssh example.user1@198.51.100.1 hostname
host.example.com
```

2. Start the **ssh-agent**.

```
$ eval $(ssh-agent)
Agent pid 20062
```

3. Add the key to **ssh-agent**.

```
$ ssh-add ~/.ssh/id_rsa
Enter passphrase for ~/.ssh/id_rsa:
Identity added: ~/.ssh/id_rsa (example.user0@198.51.100.12)
```

Verification

- Optional: Log in to the host machine using SSH.

```
$ ssh example.user1@198.51.100.1

Last login: Mon Sep 14 12:56:37 2020
```

Note that you did not have to enter the passphrase.

34.9. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **sshd(8), ssh(1), scp(1), sftp(1), ssh-keygen(1), ssh-copy-id(1), ssh_config(5), sshd_config(5), update-crypto-policies(8), and crypto-policies(7)** man pages.
- [OpenSSH Home Page](#)
- [Configuring SELinux for applications and services with non-standard configurations](#)
- [Controlling network traffic using firewalld](#)

CHAPTER 35. CONFIGURING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION

To ensure that logs from various machines in your environment are recorded centrally on a logging server, you can configure the **Rsyslog** application to record logs that fit specific criteria from the client system to the server.

35.1. THE RSYSLOG LOGGING SERVICE

The Rsyslog application, in combination with the **systemd-journald** service, provides local and remote logging support in Red Hat Enterprise Linux. The **rsyslogd** daemon continuously reads **syslog** messages received by the **systemd-journald** service from the Journal. **rsyslogd** then filters and processes these **syslog** events and records them to **rsyslog** log files or forwards them to other services according to its configuration.

The **rsyslogd** daemon also provides extended filtering, encryption protected relaying of messages, input and output modules, and support for transportation using the TCP and UDP protocols.

In **/etc/rsyslog.conf**, which is the main configuration file for **rsyslog**, you can specify the rules according to which **rsyslogd** handles the messages. Generally, you can classify messages by their source and topic (facility) and urgency (priority), and then assign an action that should be performed when a message fits these criteria.

In **/etc/rsyslog.conf**, you can also see a list of log files maintained by **rsyslogd**. Most log files are located in the **/var/log/** directory. Some applications, such as **httpd** and **samba**, store their log files in a subdirectory within **/var/log/**.

Additional resources

- The **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages.
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file.

35.2. INSTALLING RSYSLOG DOCUMENTATION

The Rsyslog application has extensive online documentation that is available at <https://www.rsyslog.com/doc/>, but you can also install the **rsyslog-doc** documentation package locally.

Prerequisites

- You have activated the **AppStream** repository on your system.
- You are authorized to install new packages using **sudo**.

Procedure

- Install the **rsyslog-doc** package:

```
# yum install rsyslog-doc
```

Verification

- Open the `/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html` file in a browser of your choice, for example:

```
$ firefox /usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html &
```

35.3. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR REMOTE LOGGING OVER TCP

The Rsyslog application enables you to both run a logging server and configure individual systems to send their log files to the logging server. To use remote logging through TCP, configure both the server and the client. The server collects and analyzes the logs sent by one or more client systems.

With the Rsyslog application, you can maintain a centralized logging system where log messages are forwarded to a server over the network. To avoid message loss when the server is not available, you can configure an action queue for the forwarding action. This way, messages that failed to be sent are stored locally until the server is reachable again. Note that such queues cannot be configured for connections using the UDP protocol.

The **omfwd** plug-in provides forwarding over UDP or TCP. The default protocol is UDP. Because the plug-in is built in, it does not have to be loaded.

By default, **rsyslog** uses TCP on port **514**.

Prerequisites

- Rsyslog is installed on the server system.
- You are logged in as **root** on the server.
- The **polycoreutils-python-utils** package is installed for the optional step using the **semanage** command.
- The **firewalld** service is running.

Procedure

1. Optional: To use a different port for **rsyslog** traffic, add the **syslogd_port_t** SELinux type to port. For example, enable port **30514**:

```
# semanage port -a -t syslogd_port_t -p tcp 30514
```

2. Optional: To use a different port for **rsyslog** traffic, configure **firewalld** to allow incoming **rsyslog** traffic on that port. For example, allow TCP traffic on port **30514**:

```
# firewall-cmd --zone=<zone-name> --permanent --add-port=30514/tcp
success
# firewall-cmd --reload
```

3. Create a new file in the `/etc/rsyslog.d/` directory named, for example, **remotelog.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
# Define templates before the rules that use them
# Per-Host templates for remote systems
template(name="TmplAuthpriv" type="list") {
    constant(value="/var/log/remote/auth/")
    property(name="hostname")
}
```

```

    constant(value="/")
    property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
    constant(value=".log")
}

template(name="TplMsg" type="list") {
    constant(value="/var/log/remote/msg/")
    property(name="hostname")
    constant(value="/")
    property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
    constant(value=".log")
}

# Provides TCP syslog reception
module(load="imtcp")

# Adding this ruleset to process remote messages
ruleset(name="remote1"){
    authpriv.* action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TplAuthpriv")
    *.info;mail.none;authpriv.none;cron.none
    action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TplMsg")
}

input(type="imtcp" port="30514" ruleset="remote1")

```

4. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/remotelog.conf** file.

5. Test the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file:

```

# rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.

```

6. Make sure the **rsyslog** service is running and enabled on the logging server:

```
# systemctl status rsyslog
```

7. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

8. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
# systemctl enable rsyslog
```

Your log server is now configured to receive and store log files from the other systems in your environment.

Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)**, **rsyslog.conf(5)**, **semanage(8)**, and **firewall-cmd(1)** man pages.
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file.

35.4. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER TCP

Follow this procedure to configure a system for forwarding log messages to a server over the TCP protocol. The **omfwd** plug-in provides forwarding over UDP or TCP. The default protocol is UDP. Because the plug-in is built in, you do not have to load it.

Prerequisites

- The **rsyslog** package is installed on the client systems that should report to the server.
- You have configured the server for remote logging.
- The specified port is permitted in SELinux and open in firewall.
- The system contains the **polycoreutils-python-utils** package, which provides the **semanage** command for adding a non-standard port to the SELinux configuration.

Procedure

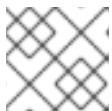
1. Create a new file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **10-remotelog.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
*.* action(type="omfwd"
        queue.type="linkedlist"
        queue.filename="example_fwd"
        action.resumeRetryCount="-1"
        queue.saveOnShutdown="on"
        target="example.com" port="30514" protocol="tcp"
    )
```

Where:

- **queue.type="linkedlist"** enables a LinkedList in-memory queue,
- **queue.filename** defines a disk storage. The backup files are created with the **example_fwd** prefix in the working directory specified by the preceding global **workDirectory** directive,
- the **action.resumeRetryCount -1** setting prevents **rsyslog** from dropping messages when retrying to connect if server is not responding,
- enabled **queue.saveOnShutdown="on"** saves in-memory data if **rsyslog** shuts down,
- the last line forwards all received messages to the logging server, port specification is optional.

With this configuration, **rsyslog** sends messages to the server but keeps messages in memory if the remote server is not reachable. A file on disk is created only if **rsyslog** runs out of the configured memory queue space or needs to shut down, which benefits the system performance.



NOTE

Rsyslog processes configuration files **/etc/rsyslog.d/** in the lexical order.

2. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

1. On the client system, send a test message:

```
# logger test
```

2. On the server system, view the `/var/log/messages` log, for example:

```
# cat /var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 hostname root[6064]: test
```

Where *hostname* is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the **logger** command, in this case **root**.

Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages.
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the `/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html` file.

35.5. CONFIGURING TLS-ENCRYPTED REMOTE LOGGING

By default, Rsyslog sends remote-logging communication in the plain text format. If your scenario requires to secure this communication channel, you can encrypt it using TLS.

To use encrypted transport through TLS, configure both the server and the client. The server collects and analyzes the logs sent by one or more client systems.

You can use either the **ossli** network stream driver (OpenSSL) or the **gtls** stream driver (GnuTLS).



NOTE

If you have a separate system with higher security, for example, a system that is not connected to any network or has stricter authorizations, use the separate system as the certifying authority (CA).

Prerequisites

- You have **root** access to both the client and server systems.
- The **rsyslog** and **rsyslog-openssl** packages are installed on the server and the client systems.
- If you use the **gtls** network stream driver, install the **rsyslog-gnutls** package instead of **rsyslog-openssl**.
- If you generate certificates using the **certtool** command, install the **gnutls-utils** package.
- On your logging server, the following certificates are in the `/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/` directory and your system configuration is updated by using the **update-ca-trust** command:

- **ca-cert.pem** - a CA certificate that can verify keys and certificates on logging servers and clients.
- **server-cert.pem** - a public key of the logging server.
- **server-key.pem** - a private key of the logging server.
- On your logging clients, the following certificates are in the **/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/** directory and your system configuration is updated by using **update-ca-trust**:
 - **ca-cert.pem** - a CA certificate that can verify keys and certificates on logging servers and clients.
 - **client-cert.pem** - a public key of a client.
 - **client-key.pem** - a private key of a client.

Procedure

1. Configure the server for receiving encrypted logs from your client systems:
 - a. Create a new file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **securelogser.conf**.
 - b. To encrypt the communication, the configuration file must contain paths to certificate files on your server, a selected authentication method, and a stream driver that supports TLS encryption. Add the following lines to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogser.conf** file:

```
# Set certificate files
global(
    DefaultNetstreamDriverCAFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca-cert.pem"
    DefaultNetstreamDriverCertFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/server-cert.pem"
    DefaultNetstreamDriverKeyFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/server-key.pem"
)

# TCP listener
module(
    load="imtcp"
    PermittedPeer=["client1.example.com", "client2.example.com"]
    StreamDriver.AuthMode="x509/name"
    StreamDriver.Mode="1"
    StreamDriver.Name="sssl"
)

# Start up listener at port 514
input(
    type="imtcp"
    port="514"
)
```



NOTE

If you prefer the GnuTLS driver, use the **StreamDriver.Name="gtls"** configuration option. See the documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package for more information about less strict authentication modes than **x509/name**.

- c. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogser.conf** file.
- d. Verify the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file and any files in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory:

```
# rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run (level 1)...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

- e. Make sure the **rsyslog** service is running and enabled on the logging server:

```
# systemctl status rsyslog
```

- f. Restart the **rsyslog** service:

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

- g. Optional: If Rsyslog is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
# systemctl enable rsyslog
```

2. Configure clients for sending encrypted logs to the server:

- a. On a client system, create a new file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **securelogcli.conf**.
- b. Add the following lines to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogcli.conf** file:

```
# Set certificate files
global(
    DefaultNetstreamDriverCAFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/ca-cert.pem"
    DefaultNetstreamDriverCertFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/client-cert.pem"
    DefaultNetstreamDriverKeyFile="/etc/pki/ca-trust/source/anchors/client-key.pem"
)

# Set up the action for all messages
*. * action(
    type="omfwd"
    StreamDriver="oss"
    StreamDriverMode="1"
    StreamDriverPermittedPeers="server.example.com"
    StreamDriverAuthMode="x509/name"
    target="server.example.com" port="514" protocol="tcp"
)
```



NOTE

If you prefer the GnuTLS driver, use the **StreamDriver.Name="gtls"** configuration option.

- c. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/securelogser.conf** file.

- d. Verify the syntax of the `/etc/rsyslog.conf` file and other files in the `/etc/rsyslog.d/` directory:

```
# rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run (level 1)...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

- e. Make sure the **rsyslog** service is running and enabled on the logging server:

```
# systemctl status rsyslog
```

- f. Restart the **rsyslog** service:

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

- g. Optional: If Rsyslog is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
# systemctl enable rsyslog
```

Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

1. On the client system, send a test message:

```
# logger test
```

2. On the server system, view the `/var/log/messages` log, for example:

```
# cat /var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 hostname root[6064]: test
```

Where **hostname** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

Additional resources

- The **certtool(1)**, **openssl(1)**, **update-ca-trust(8)**, **rsyslogd(8)**, and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages.
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package at `/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html`.
- The [Using the Logging System Role](#) article.

35.6. CONFIGURING A SERVER FOR RECEIVING REMOTE LOGGING INFORMATION OVER UDP

The **Rsyslog** application enables you to configure a system to receive logging information from remote systems. To use remote logging through UDP, configure both the server and the client. The receiving server collects and analyzes the logs sent by one or more client systems. By default, **rsyslog** uses UDP on port **514** to receive log information from remote systems.

Follow this procedure to configure a server for collecting and analyzing logs sent by one or more client systems over the UDP protocol.

Prerequisites

- Rsyslog is installed on the server system.
- You are logged in as **root** on the server.
- The **polycoreutils-python-utils** package is installed for the optional step using the **semanage** command.
- The **firewalld** service is running.

Procedure

1. Optional: To use a different port for **rsyslog** traffic than the default port **514**:

- a. Add the **syslogd_port_t** SELinux type to the SELinux policy configuration, replacing **portno** with the port number you want **rsyslog** to use:

```
# semanage port -a -t syslogd_port_t -p udp portno
```

- b. Configure **firewalld** to allow incoming **rsyslog** traffic, replacing **portno** with the port number and **zone** with the zone you want **rsyslog** to use:

```
# firewall-cmd --zone=zone --permanent --add-port=portno/udp
success
# firewall-cmd --reload
```

- c. Reload the firewall rules:

```
# firewall-cmd --reload
```

2. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory, for example, **remotelogserv.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
# Define templates before the rules that use them
# Per-Host templates for remote systems
template(name="TmplAuthpriv" type="list") {
    constant(value="/var/log/remote/auth/")
    property(name="hostname")
    constant(value="")
    property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
    constant(value=".log")
}

template(name="TmplMsg" type="list") {
    constant(value="/var/log/remote/msg/")
    property(name="hostname")
    constant(value="")
    property(name="programname" SecurePath="replace")
    constant(value=".log")
}
```

```
# Provides UDP syslog reception
module(load="imudp")

# This ruleset processes remote messages
ruleset(name="remote1"){
    authpriv.* action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TmplAuthpriv")
    *.info;mail.none;authpriv.none;cron.none
    action(type="omfile" DynaFile="TmplMsg")
}

input(type="imudp" port="514" ruleset="remote1")
```

Where **514** is the port number **rsyslog** uses by default. You can specify a different port instead.

3. Verify the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file and all **.conf** files in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory:

```
# rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-2.el8, config validation run...
```

4. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

5. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
# systemctl enable rsyslog
```

Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)**, **rsyslog.conf(5)**, **semanage(8)**, and **firewall-cmd(1)** man pages.
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file.

35.7. CONFIGURING REMOTE LOGGING TO A SERVER OVER UDP

Follow this procedure to configure a system for forwarding log messages to a server over the UDP protocol. The **omfwd** plug-in provides forwarding over UDP or TCP. The default protocol is UDP. Because the plug-in is built in, you do not have to load it.

Prerequisites

- The **rsyslog** package is installed on the client systems that should report to the server.
- You have configured the server for remote logging as described in [Configuring a server for receiving remote logging information over UDP](#).

Procedure

1. Create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory, for example, **10-remotelogcli.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
*.* action(type="omfwd"
    queue.type="linkedlist")
```

```

queue.filename="example_fwd"
action.resumeRetryCount="-1"
queue.saveOnShutdown="on"
target="example.com" port="portno" protocol="udp"
)

```

Where:

- **queue.type="linkedlist"** enables a LinkedList in-memory queue.
- **queue.filename** defines a disk storage. The backup files are created with the **example_fwd** prefix in the working directory specified by the preceding global **workDirectory** directive.
- The **action.resumeRetryCount -1** setting prevents **rsyslog** from dropping messages when retrying to connect if the server is not responding.
- **enabled queue.saveOnShutdown="on"** saves in-memory data if **rsyslog** shuts down.
- **portno** is the port number you want **rsyslog** to use. The default value is **514**.
- The last line forwards all received messages to the logging server, port specification is optional.
With this configuration, **rsyslog** sends messages to the server but keeps messages in memory if the remote server is not reachable. A file on disk is created only if **rsyslog** runs out of the configured memory queue space or needs to shut down, which benefits the system performance.



NOTE

Rsyslog processes configuration files **/etc/rsyslog.d/** in the lexical order.

2. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

3. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
# systemctl enable rsyslog
```

Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

1. On the client system, send a test message:

```
# logger test
```

2. On the server system, view the **/var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log** log, for example:

```
# cat /var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 hostname root[6064]: test
```

Where **hostname** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages.
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package at `/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html`.

35.8. LOAD BALANCING HELPER IN RSYSLOG

The **RebindInterval** setting specifies an interval at which the current connection is broken and is re-established. This setting applies to TCP, UDP, and RELP traffic. The load balancers perceive it as a new connection and forward the messages to another physical target system.

The **RebindInterval** setting proves to be helpful in scenarios when a target system has changed its IP address. The Rsyslog application caches the IP address when the connection establishes, therefore, the messages are sent to the same server. If the IP address changes, the UDP packets will be lost until the Rsyslog service restarts. Re-establishing the connection will ensure the IP to be resolved by DNS again.

```
action(type="omfwd" protocol="tcp" RebindInterval="250" target="example.com" port="514" ...)
```

```
action(type="omfwd" protocol="udp" RebindInterval="250" target="example.com" port="514" ...)
```

```
action(type="omrelp" RebindInterval="250" target="example.com" port="6514" ...)
```

35.9. CONFIGURING RELIABLE REMOTE LOGGING

With the Reliable Event Logging Protocol (RELP), you can send and receive **syslog** messages over TCP with a much reduced risk of message loss. RELP provides reliable delivery of event messages, which makes it useful in environments where message loss is not acceptable. To use RELP, configure the **imrelp** input module, which runs on the server and receives the logs, and the **omrelp** output module, which runs on the client and sends logs to the logging server.

Prerequisites

- You have installed the **rsyslog**, **librelp**, and **rsyslog-relp** packages on the server and the client systems.
- The specified port is permitted in SELinux and open in the firewall.

Procedure

1. Configure the client system for reliable remote logging:
 - a. On the client system, create a new **.conf** file in the `/etc/rsyslog.d/` directory named, for example, **relpclient.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
module(load="omrelp")
*. * action(type="omrelp" target="_target_IP_" port="_target_port_")
```

Where:

- **target_IP** is the IP address of the logging server.
- **target_port** is the port of the logging server.

b. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/relpclient.conf** file.

c. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

d. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
# systemctl enable rsyslog
```

2. Configure the server system for reliable remote logging:

a. On the server system, create a new **.conf** file in the **/etc/rsyslog.d/** directory named, for example, **relpserv.conf**, and insert the following content:

```
ruleset(name="relp"){
    *.* action(type="omfile" file="_log_path_")
}

module(load="imrelp")
input(type="imrelp" port="_target_port_" ruleset="relp")
```

Where:

- **log_path** specifies the path for storing messages.
- **target_port** is the port of the logging server. Use the same value as in the client configuration file.

b. Save the changes to the **/etc/rsyslog.d/relpserv.conf** file.

c. Restart the **rsyslog** service.

```
# systemctl restart rsyslog
```

d. Optional: If **rsyslog** is not enabled, ensure the **rsyslog** service starts automatically after reboot:

```
# systemctl enable rsyslog
```

Verification

To verify that the client system sends messages to the server, follow these steps:

1. On the client system, send a test message:

```
# logger test
```

2. On the server system, view the log at the specified **log_path**, for example:

```
# cat /var/log/remote/msg/hostname/root.log
Feb 25 03:53:17 hostname root[6064]: test
```

Where **hostname** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

Additional resources

- **rsyslogd(8)** and **rsyslog.conf(5)** man pages.
- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file.

35.10. SUPPORTED RSYSLOG MODULES

To expand the functionality of the Rsyslog application, you can use specific modules. Modules provide additional inputs (Input Modules), outputs (Output Modules), and other functionalities. A module can also provide additional configuration directives that become available after you load the module.

You can list the input and output modules installed on your system by entering the following command:

```
# ls /usr/lib64/rsyslog/{i,o}m*
```

You can view the list of all available **rsyslog** modules in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/configuration/modules/idx_output.html** file after you install the **rsyslog-doc** package.

35.11. CONFIGURING THE NETCONSOLE SERVICE TO LOG KERNEL MESSAGES TO A REMOTE HOST

When logging to disk or using a serial console is not possible, you can use the **netconsole** kernel module and the same-named service to log kernel messages over a network to a remote **rsyslog** service.

Prerequisites

- A system log service, such as **rsyslog** is installed on the remote host.
- The remote system log service is configured to receive incoming log entries from this host.

Procedure

1. Install the **netconsole-service** package:

```
# yum install netconsole-service
```

2. Edit the **/etc/sysconfig/netconsole** file and set the **SYSLOGADDR** parameter to the IP address of the remote host:

```
# SYSLOGADDR=192.0.2.1
```

3. Enable and start the **netconsole** service:

```
# systemctl enable --now netconsole
```

Verification steps

- Display the **/var/log/messages** file on the remote system log server.

Additional resources

- [Configuring a remote logging solution](#)

35.12. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- Documentation installed with the **rsyslog-doc** package in the **/usr/share/doc/rsyslog/html/index.html** file
- **rsyslog.conf(5)** and **rsyslogd(8)** man pages
- [Configuring system logging without journald or with minimized journald usage](#) Knowledgebase article
- [Negative effects of the RHEL default logging setup on performance and their mitigations](#) Knowledgebase article
- [Using the Logging System Role](#) chapter

CHAPTER 36. USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE

As a system administrator, you can use the **logging** System Role to configure a RHEL host as a logging server to collect logs from many client systems.

36.1. THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE

With the **logging** System Role, you can deploy logging configurations on local and remote hosts.

To apply a **logging** System Role on one or more systems, you define the logging configuration in a *playbook*. A *playbook* is a list of one or more plays. Playbooks are human-readable, and they are written in the YAML format. For more information about playbooks, see [Working with playbooks](#) in Ansible documentation.

The set of systems that you want to configure according to the *playbook* is defined in an *inventory file*. For more information on creating and using inventories, see [How to build your inventory](#) in Ansible documentation.

Logging solutions provide multiple ways of reading logs and multiple logging outputs.

For example, a logging system can receive the following inputs:

- local files,
- **systemd/journal**,
- another logging system over the network.

In addition, a logging system can have the following outputs:

- logs stored in the local files in the **/var/log** directory,
- logs sent to Elasticsearch,
- logs forwarded to another logging system.

With the **logging** System Role, you can combine the inputs and outputs to fit your scenario. For example, you can configure a logging solution that stores inputs from **journal** in a local file, whereas inputs read from files are both forwarded to another logging system and stored in the local log files.

36.2. LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE PARAMETERS

In a **logging** System Role *playbook*, you define the inputs in the **logging_inputs** parameter, outputs in the **logging_outputs** parameter, and the relationships between the inputs and outputs in the **logging_flows** parameter. The **logging** System Role processes these variables with additional options to configure the logging system. You can also enable encryption.



NOTE

Currently, the only available logging system in the **logging** System Role is **Rsyslog**.

- **logging_inputs**: List of inputs for the logging solution.

- **name**: Unique name of the input. Used in the **logging_flows**: inputs list and a part of the generated **config** file name.
- **type**: Type of the input element. The type specifies a task type which corresponds to a directory name in **roles/rsyslog/{tasks,vars}/inputs/**.
 - **basics**: Inputs configuring inputs from **systemd** journal or **unix** socket.
 - **kernel_message**: Load **imklog** if set to **true**. Default to **false**.
 - **use_imuxsock**: Use **imuxsock** instead of **imjournal**. Default to **false**.
 - **ratelimit_burst**: Maximum number of messages that can be emitted within **ratelimit_interval**. Default to **20000** if **use_imuxsock** is false. Default to **200** if **use_imuxsock** is true.
 - **ratelimit_interval**: Interval to evaluate **ratelimit_burst**. Default to 600 seconds if **use_imuxsock** is false. Default to 0 if **use_imuxsock** is true. 0 indicates rate limiting is turned off.
 - **persist_state_interval**: Journal state is persisted every **value** messages. Default to **10**. Effective only when **use_imuxsock** is false.
 - **files**: Inputs configuring inputs from local files.
 - **remote**: Inputs configuring inputs from the other logging system over network.
- **state**: State of the configuration file. **present** or **absent**. Default to **present**.
- **logging_outputs**: List of outputs for the logging solution.
 - **files**: Outputs configuring outputs to local files.
 - **forwards**: Outputs configuring outputs to another logging system.
 - **remote_files**: Outputs configuring outputs from another logging system to local files.
- **logging_flows**: List of flows that define relationships between **logging_inputs** and **logging_outputs**. The **logging_flows** variable has the following keys:
 - **name**: Unique name of the flow
 - **inputs**: List of **logging_inputs** name values
 - **outputs**: List of **logging_outputs** name values.

Additional resources

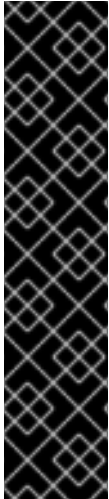
- Documentation installed with the **rhel-system-roles** package in **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.html**

36.3. APPLYING A LOCAL LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE

Prepare and apply an Ansible playbook to configure a logging solution on a set of separate machines. Each machine records logs locally.

Prerequisites

- Access and permissions to one or more *managed nodes*, which are systems you want to configure with the **logging** System Role.
- Access and permissions to a *control node*, which is a system from which Red Hat Ansible Core configures other systems.
On the control node:
 - The **ansible-core** and **rhel-system-roles** packages are installed.



IMPORTANT

RHEL 8.0–8.5 provided access to a separate Ansible repository that contains Ansible Engine 2.9 for automation based on Ansible. Ansible Engine contains command-line utilities such as **ansible**, **ansible-playbook**, connectors such as **docker** and **podman**, and many plugins and modules. For information on how to obtain and install Ansible Engine, see the [How to download and install Red Hat Ansible Engine](#) Knowledgebase article.

RHEL 8.6 and 9.0 have introduced Ansible Core (provided as the **ansible-core** package), which contains the Ansible command-line utilities, commands, and a small set of built-in Ansible plugins. RHEL provides this package through the AppStream repository, and it has a limited scope of support. For more information, see the [Scope of support for the Ansible Core package included in the RHEL 9 and RHEL 8.6 and later AppStream repositories](#) Knowledgebase article.

- An inventory file which lists the managed nodes.



NOTE

You do not have to have the **rsyslog** package installed, because the System Role installs **rsyslog** when deployed.

Procedure

1. Create a playbook that defines the required role:
 - a. Create a new YAML file and open it in a text editor, for example:

```
# vi logging-playbook.yml
```

- b. Insert the following content:

```
---
- name: Deploying basics input and implicit files output
  hosts: all
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.logging
  vars:
    logging_inputs:
      - name: system_input
        type: basics
    logging_outputs:
      - name: files_output
        type: files
    logging_flows:
```

```
- name: flow1
  inputs: [system_input]
  outputs: [files_output]
```

2. Run the playbook on a specific inventory:

```
# ansible-playbook -i inventory-file /path/to/file/logging-playbook.yml
```

Where:

- **inventory-file** is the inventory file.
- **logging-playbook.yml** is the playbook you use.

Verification

1. Test the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file:

```
# rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-6.el8, config validation run...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

2. Verify that the system sends messages to the log:

- a. Send a test message:

```
# logger test
```

- b. View the **/var/log/messages** log, for example:

```
# cat /var/log/messages
Aug  5 13:48:31 hostname root[6778]: test
```

Where `hostname` is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

36.4. FILTERING LOGS IN A LOCAL LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE

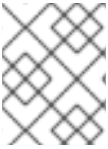
You can deploy a logging solution which filters the logs based on the **rsyslog** property-based filter.

Prerequisites

- Access and permissions to one or more *managed nodes*, which are systems you want to configure with the **logging** System Role.
- Access and permissions to a *control node*, which is a system from which Red Hat Ansible Core configures other systems.

On the control node:

- Red Hat Ansible Core is installed
- The **rhel-system-roles** package is installed
- An inventory file which lists the managed nodes.



NOTE

You do not have to have the **rsyslog** package installed, because the System Role installs **rsyslog** when deployed.

Procedure

1. Create a new **playbook.yml** file with the following content:

```
---
- name: Deploying files input and configured files output
  hosts: all
  roles:
    - linux-system-roles.logging
  vars:
    logging_inputs:
      - name: files_input
        type: basics
    logging_outputs:
      - name: files_output0
        type: files
        property: msg
        property_op: contains
        property_value: error
        path: /var/log/errors.log
      - name: files_output1
        type: files
        property: msg
        property_op: "!contains"
        property_value: error
        path: /var/log/others.log
    logging_flows:
      - name: flow0
        inputs: [files_input]
        outputs: [files_output0, files_output1]
```

Using this configuration, all messages that contain the **error** string are logged in **/var/log/errors.log**, and all other messages are logged in **/var/log/others.log**.

You can replace the **error** property value with the string by which you want to filter.

You can modify the variables according to your preferences.

2. Optional: Verify playbook syntax.

```
# ansible-playbook --syntax-check playbook.yml
```

3. Run the playbook on your inventory file:

```
# ansible-playbook -i inventory_file /path/to/file/playbook.yml
```

Verification

1. Test the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file:

```
# rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-6.el8, config validation run...
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

2. Verify that the system sends messages that contain the **error** string to the log:

- a. Send a test message:

```
# logger error
```

- b. View the **/var/log/errors.log** log, for example:

```
# cat /var/log/errors.log
Aug  5 13:48:31 hostname root[6778]: error
```

Where **hostname** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

Additional resources

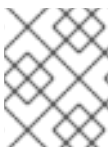
- Documentation installed with the **rhel-system-roles** package in **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.html**

36.5. APPLYING A REMOTE LOGGING SOLUTION USING THE **LOGGING** SYSTEM ROLE

Follow these steps to prepare and apply a Red Hat Ansible Core playbook to configure a remote logging solution. In this playbook, one or more clients take logs from **systemd-journal** and forward them to a remote server. The server receives remote input from **remote_rsyslog** and **remote_files** and outputs the logs to local files in directories named by remote host names.

Prerequisites

- Access and permissions to one or more *managed nodes*, which are systems you want to configure with the **logging** System Role.
- Access and permissions to a *control node*, which is a system from which Red Hat Ansible Core configures other systems.
On the control node:
 - The **ansible-core** and **rhel-system-roles** packages are installed.
 - An inventory file which lists the managed nodes.



NOTE

You do not have to have the **rsyslog** package installed, because the System Role installs **rsyslog** when deployed.

Procedure

1. Create a playbook that defines the required role:

- a. Create a new YAML file and open it in a text editor, for example:

```
# vi logging-playbook.yml
```

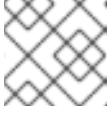
- b. Insert the following content into the file:

```
---
- name: Deploying remote input and remote_files output
  hosts: server
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.logging
  vars:
    logging_inputs:
      - name: remote_udp_input
        type: remote
        udp_ports: [ 601 ]
      - name: remote_tcp_input
        type: remote
        tcp_ports: [ 601 ]
    logging_outputs:
      - name: remote_files_output
        type: remote_files
    logging_flows:
      - name: flow_0
        inputs: [remote_udp_input, remote_tcp_input]
        outputs: [remote_files_output]

- name: Deploying basics input and forwards output
  hosts: clients
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.logging
  vars:
    logging_inputs:
      - name: basic_input
        type: basics
    logging_outputs:
      - name: forward_output0
        type: forwards
        severity: info
        target: _host1.example.com_
        udp_port: 601
      - name: forward_output1
        type: forwards
        facility: mail
        target: _host1.example.com_
        tcp_port: 601
    logging_flows:
      - name: flows0
        inputs: [basic_input]
        outputs: [forward_output0, forward_output1]

[basic_input]
[forward_output0, forward_output1]
```

Where **host1.example.com** is the logging server.

**NOTE**

You can modify the parameters in the playbook to fit your needs.

**WARNING**

The logging solution works only with the ports defined in the SELinux policy of the server or client system and open in the firewall. The default SELinux policy includes ports 601, 514, 6514, 10514, and 20514. To use a different port, [modify the SELinux policy on the client and server systems](#). Configuring the firewall through System Roles is not yet supported.

2. Create an inventory file that lists your servers and clients:

- a. Create a new file and open it in a text editor, for example:

```
# vi inventory.ini
```

- b. Insert the following content into the inventory file:

```
[servers]
server ansible_host=host1.example.com
[clients]
client ansible_host=host2.example.com
```

Where:

- **host1.example.com** is the logging server.
- **host2.example.com** is the logging client.

3. Run the playbook on your inventory.

```
# ansible-playbook -i /path/to/file/inventory.ini /path/to/file/_logging-playbook.yml
```

Where:

- **inventory.ini** is the inventory file.
- **logging-playbook.yml** is the playbook you created.

Verification

1. On both the client and the server system, test the syntax of the **/etc/rsyslog.conf** file:

```
# rsyslogd -N 1
rsyslogd: version 8.1911.0-6.el8, config validation run (level 1), master config
/etc/rsyslog.conf
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

2. Verify that the client system sends messages to the server:

a. On the client system, send a test message:

```
# logger test
```

b. On the server system, view the `/var/log/messages` log, for example:

```
# cat /var/log/messages
Aug  5 13:48:31 host2.example.com root[6778]: test
```

Where **host2.example.com** is the host name of the client system. Note that the log contains the user name of the user that entered the logger command, in this case **root**.

Additional resources

- [Preparing a control node and managed nodes to use RHEL System Roles](#)
- Documentation installed with the **rhel-system-roles** package in `/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.html`
- [RHEL System Roles](#) KB article

36.6. USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLE WITH TLS

Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a cryptographic protocol designed to securely communicate over the computer network.

As an administrator, you can use the **logging** RHEL System Role to configure secure transfer of logs using Red Hat Ansible Automation Platform.

36.6.1. Configuring client logging with TLS

You can use the **logging** System Role to configure logging in RHEL systems that are logged on a local machine and can transfer logs to the remote logging system with TLS by running an Ansible playbook.

This procedure configures TLS on all hosts in the clients group in the Ansible inventory. The TLS protocol encrypts the message transmission for secure transfer of logs over the network.

Prerequisites

- You have permissions to run playbooks on managed nodes on which you want to configure TLS.
- The managed nodes are listed in the inventory file on the control node.
- The **ansible** and **rhel-system-roles** packages are installed on the control node.

Procedure

1. Create a **playbook.yml** file with the following content:

```
---
- name: Deploying files input and forwards output with certs
  hosts: clients
```

```

roles:
- rhel-system-roles.logging
vars:
  logging_pki_files:
  - ca_cert_src: /local/path/to/ca_cert.pem
    cert_src: /local/path/to/cert.pem
    private_key_src: /local/path/to/key.pem
  logging_inputs:
  - name: input_name
    type: files
    input_log_path: /var/log/containers/*.log
  logging_outputs:
  - name: output_name
    type: forwards
    target: your_target_host
    tcp_port: 514
    tls: true
    pki_authmode: x509/name
    permitted_server: 'server.example.com'
  logging_flows:
  - name: flow_name
    inputs: [input_name]
    outputs: [output_name]

```

The playbook uses the following parameters:

logging_pki_files

Using this parameter you can configure TLS and has to pass **ca_cert_src**, **cert_src**, and **private_key_src** parameters.

ca_cert

Represents the path to CA certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

cert

Represents the path to cert. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

private_key

Represents the path to private key. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

ca_cert_src

Represents local CA cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **ca_cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

cert_src

Represents the local cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

private_key_src

Represents the local key file path which is copied to the target host. If **private_key** is specified, it is copied to the location.

tls

Using this parameter ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper, you can set **tls: true**.

2. Verify playbook syntax:

```
# ansible-playbook --syntax-check playbook.yml
```

3. Run the playbook on your inventory file:

```
# ansible-playbook -i inventory_file playbook.yml
```

36.6.2. Configuring server logging with TLS

You can use the **logging** System Role to configure logging in RHEL systems as a server and can receive logs from the remote logging system with TLS by running an Ansible playbook.

This procedure configures TLS on all hosts in the server group in the Ansible inventory.

Prerequisites

- You have permissions to run playbooks on managed nodes on which you want to configure TLS.
- The managed nodes are listed in the inventory file on the control node.
- The **ansible** and **rhel-system-roles** packages are installed on the control node.

Procedure

1. Create a ***playbook.yml*** file with the following content:

```
---
- name: Deploying remote input and remote_files output with certs
  hosts: server
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.logging
  vars:
    logging_pki_files:
      - ca_cert_src: /local/path/to/ca_cert.pem
        cert_src: /local/path/to/cert.pem
        private_key_src: /local/path/to/key.pem
    logging_inputs:
      - name: input_name
        type: remote
        tcp_ports: 514
        tls: true
        permitted_clients: ['clients.example.com']
    logging_outputs:
      - name: output_name
        type: remote_files
        remote_log_path: /var/log/remote/%FROMHOST%/PROGRAMNAME:::secpath-
replace%.log
        async_writing: true
        client_count: 20
        io_buffer_size: 8192
    logging_flows:
```

```
- name: flow_name
  inputs: [input_name]
  outputs: [output_name]
```

The playbook uses the following parameters:

logging_pki_files

Using this parameter you can configure TLS and has to pass **ca_cert_src**, **cert_src**, and **private_key_src** parameters.

ca_cert

Represents the path to CA certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

cert

Represents the path to cert. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

private_key

Represents the path to private key. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.

ca_cert_src

Represents local CA cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **ca_cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

cert_src

Represents the local cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.

private_key_src

Represents the local key file path which is copied to the target host. If **private_key** is specified, it is copied to the location.

tls

Using this parameter ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper, you can set **tls: true**.

2. Verify playbook syntax:

```
# ansible-playbook --syntax-check playbook.yml
```

3. Run the playbook on your inventory file:

```
# ansible-playbook -i inventory_file playbook.yml
```

36.7. USING THE LOGGING SYSTEM ROLES WITH RELP

Reliable Event Logging Protocol (RELP) is a networking protocol for data and message logging over the TCP network. It ensures reliable delivery of event messages and you can use it in environments that do not tolerate any message loss.

The RELP sender transfers log entries in form of commands and the receiver acknowledges them once they are processed. To ensure consistency, RELP stores the transaction number to each transferred command for any kind of message recovery.

You can consider a remote logging system in between the RELP Client and RELP Server. The RELP Client transfers the logs to the remote logging system and the RELP Server receives all the logs sent by the remote logging system.

Administrators can use the **logging** System Role to configure the logging system to reliably send and receive log entries.

36.7.1. Configuring client logging with RELP

You can use the **logging** System Role to configure logging in RHEL systems that are logged on a local machine and can transfer logs to the remote logging system with RELP by running an Ansible playbook.

This procedure configures RELP on all hosts in the **clients** group in the Ansible inventory. The RELP configuration uses Transport Layer Security (TLS) to encrypt the message transmission for secure transfer of logs over the network.

Prerequisites

- You have permissions to run playbooks on managed nodes on which you want to configure RELP.
- The managed nodes are listed in the inventory file on the control node.
- The **ansible** and **rhel-system-roles** packages are installed on the control node.

Procedure

1. Create a **playbook.yml** file with the following content:

```
---
- name: Deploying basic input and relp output
  hosts: clients
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.logging
  vars:
    logging_inputs:
      - name: basic_input
        type: basics
    logging_outputs:
      - name: relp_client
        type: relp
        target: _logging.server.com_
        port: 20514
        tls: true
        ca_cert: _/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem_
        cert: _/etc/pki/tls/certs/client-cert.pem_
        private_key: _/etc/pki/tls/private/client-key.pem_
        pki_authmode: name
        permitted_servers:
          - '*.server.example.com'
    logging_flows:
      - name: _example_flow_
        inputs: [basic_input]
        outputs: [relp_client]
```

The playbooks uses following settings:

- **target:** This is a required parameter that specifies the host name where the remote logging system is running.
- **port:** Port number the remote logging system is listening.
- **tls:** Ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper you can set the **tls** variable to **false**. By default **tls** parameter is set to true while working with RELP and requires key/certificates and triplets **{ca_cert, cert, private_key}** and/or **{ca_cert_src, cert_src, private_key_src}**.
 - If **{ca_cert_src, cert_src, private_key_src}** triplet is set, the default locations **/etc/pki/tls/certs** and **/etc/pki/tls/private** are used as the destination on the managed node to transfer files from control node. In this case, the file names are identical to the original ones in the triplet
 - If **{ca_cert, cert, private_key}** triplet is set, files are expected to be on the default path before the logging configuration.
 - If both the triplets are set, files are transferred from local path from control node to specific path of the managed node.
- **ca_cert:** Represents the path to CA certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.
- **cert:** Represents the path to cert. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.
- **private_key:** Represents the path to private key. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.
- **ca_cert_src:** Represents local CA cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **ca_cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.
- **cert_src:** Represents the local cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.
- **private_key_src:** Represents the local key file path which is copied to the target host. If **private_key** is specified, it is copied to the location.
- **pki_authmode:** Accepts the authentication mode as **name** or **fingerprint**.
- **permitted_servers:** List of servers that will be allowed by the logging client to connect and send logs over TLS.
- **inputs:** List of logging input dictionary.
- **outputs:** List of logging output dictionary.

2. Optional: Verify playbook syntax.

```
# ansible-playbook --syntax-check playbook.yml
```

3. Run the playbook:

```
# ansible-playbook -i inventory_file playbook.yml
```

36.7.2. Configuring server logging with RELP

You can use the **logging** System Role to configure logging in RHEL systems as a server and can receive logs from the remote logging system with RELP by running an Ansible playbook.

This procedure configures RELP on all hosts in the **server** group in the Ansible inventory. The RELP configuration uses TLS to encrypt the message transmission for secure transfer of logs over the network.

Prerequisites

- You have permissions to run playbooks on managed nodes on which you want to configure RELP.
- The managed nodes are listed in the inventory file on the control node.
- The **ansible** and **rhel-system-roles** packages are installed on the control node.

Procedure

1. Create a **playbook.yml** file with the following content:

```
---
- name: Deploying remote input and remote_files output
  hosts: server
  roles:
    - rhel-system-roles.logging
  vars:
    logging_inputs:
      - name: relp_server
        type: relp
        port: 20514
        tls: true
        ca_cert: _/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem_
        cert: _/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem_
        private_key: _/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem_
        pki_authmode: name
        permitted_clients:
          - '_*example.client.com_'
    logging_outputs:
      - name: _remote_files_output_
        type: _remote_files_
    logging_flows:
      - name: _example_flow_
        inputs: _relp_server_
        outputs: _remote_files_output_
```

The playbooks uses following settings:

- **port**: Port number the remote logging system is listening.
- **tls**: Ensures secure transfer of logs over the network. If you do not want a secure wrapper you can set the **tls** variable to **false**. By default **tls** parameter is set to true while working with RELP and requires key/certificates and triplets {**ca_cert**, **cert**, **private_key**} and/or {**ca_cert_src**, **cert_src**, **private_key_src**}.

- If **{ca_cert_src, cert_src, private_key_src}** triplet is set, the default locations **/etc/pki/tls/certs** and **/etc/pki/tls/private** are used as the destination on the managed node to transfer files from control node. In this case, the file names are identical to the original ones in the triplet
- If **{ca_cert, cert, private_key}** triplet is set, files are expected to be on the default path before the logging configuration.
- If both the triplets are set, files are transferred from local path from control node to specific path of the managed node.
- **ca_cert**: Represents the path to CA certificate. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca.pem** and the file name is set by the user.
- **cert**: Represents the path to cert. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/certs/server-cert.pem** and the file name is set by the user.
- **private_key**: Represents the path to private key. Default path is **/etc/pki/tls/private/server-key.pem** and the file name is set by the user.
- **ca_cert_src**: Represents local CA cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **ca_cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.
- **cert_src**: Represents the local cert file path which is copied to the target host. If **cert** is specified, it is copied to the location.
- **private_key_src**: Represents the local key file path which is copied to the target host. If **private_key** is specified, it is copied to the location.
- **pki_authmode**: Accepts the authentication mode as **name** or **fingerprint**.
- **permitted_clients**: List of clients that will be allowed by the logging server to connect and send logs over TLS.
- **inputs**: List of logging input dictionary.
- **outputs**: List of logging output dictionary.

2. Optional: Verify playbook syntax.

```
# ansible-playbook --syntax-check playbook.yml
```

3. Run the playbook:

```
# ansible-playbook -i inventory_file playbook.yml
```

36.8. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- [Preparing a control node and managed nodes to use RHEL System Roles](#)
- Documentation installed with the **rhel-system-roles** package in **/usr/share/ansible/roles/rhel-system-roles.logging/README.html**.
- [RHEL System Roles](#)
- **ansible-playbook(1)** man page.

CHAPTER 37. INTRODUCTION TO PYTHON

Python is a high-level programming language that supports multiple programming paradigms, such as object-oriented, imperative, functional, and procedural paradigms. Python has dynamic semantics and can be used for general-purpose programming.

With Red Hat Enterprise Linux, many packages that are installed on the system, such as packages providing system tools, tools for data analysis, or web applications, are written in Python. To use these packages, you must have the **python*** packages installed.

37.1. PYTHON VERSIONS

Two incompatible versions of Python are widely used, Python 2.x and Python 3.x. RHEL 8 provides the following versions of Python.

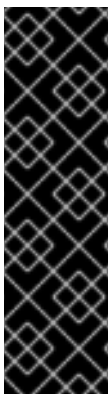
Table 37.1. Python versions in RHEL 8

Version	Package to install	Command examples	Available since	Life cycle
Python 3.6	python3	python3, pip3	RHEL 8.0	full RHEL 8
Python 2.7	python2	python2, pip2	RHEL 8.0	shorter
Python 3.8	python38	python3.8, pip3.8	RHEL 8.2	shorter
Python 3.9	python39	python3.9, pip3.9	RHEL 8.4	shorter

For details about the length of support, see [Red Hat Enterprise Linux Life Cycle](#) and [Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 Application Streams Life Cycle](#).

Each of the Python versions is distributed in a separate module and by design you can install multiple modules in parallel on the same system.

The **python38** and **python39** modules do not include the same bindings to system tools (RPM, DNF, SELinux, and others) that are provided for the **python36** module. Therefore, use **python36** in instances where the greatest compatibility with the base operating system or binary compatibility is necessary. In unique instances where system bindings are necessary together with later versions of various Python modules, use the **python36** module in combination with third-party upstream Python modules installed through **pip** into Python's **venv** or **virtualenv** environments.



IMPORTANT

Always specify the version of Python when installing it, invoking it, or otherwise interacting with it. For example, use **python3** instead of **python** in package and command names. All Python-related commands should also include the version, for example, **pip3**, **pip2**, **pip3.8**, or **pip3.9**.

The unversioned **python** command (**/usr/bin/python**) is not available by default in RHEL 8. You can configure it using the **alternatives** command; for instructions, see [Configuring the unversioned Python](#). Any manual changes to **/usr/bin/python**, except changes made using the **alternatives** command, might be overwritten upon an update.

As a system administrator, use Python 3 for the following reasons:

- Python 3 represents the main development direction of the Python project.
- Support for Python 2 in the upstream community ended in 2020.
- Popular Python libraries are discontinuing Python 2 support in upstream.
- Python 2 in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 will have a shorter life cycle and aims to facilitate a smoother transition to **Python 3** for customers.

For developers, Python 3 has the following advantages over Python 2:

- Python 3 enables you to write expressive, maintainable, and correct code more easily.
- Code written in Python 3 will have greater longevity.
- Python 3 has new features, including **asyncio**, f-strings, advanced unpacking, keyword-only arguments, and chained exceptions.

However, legacy software might require **/usr/bin/python** to be configured to Python 2. For this reason, no default **python** package is distributed with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, and you can choose between using Python 2 and 3 as **/usr/bin/python**, as described in [Configuring the unversioned Python](#).



IMPORTANT

System tools in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 use Python version 3.6 provided by the internal **platform-python** package. Red Hat advises customers to use the **python36** package instead.

CHAPTER 38. INSTALLING AND USING PYTHON

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, Python 3 is distributed in versions 3.6, 3.8, and 3.9, provided by the **python36**, **python38**, and **python39** modules in the AppStream repository.



WARNING

Using the unversioned **python** command to install or run Python does not work by default due to ambiguity. Always specify the version of Python, or configure the system default version by using the **alternatives** command.

38.1. INSTALLING PYTHON 3

By design, you can install RHEL 8 modules in parallel, including the **python27**, **python36**, **python38**, and **python39** modules. Note that parallel installation is not supported for multiple streams within a single module.

You can install Python 3.8 and Python 3.9, including packages built for either version, in parallel with Python 3.6 on the same system, with the exception of the **mod_wsgi** module. Due to a limitation of the Apache HTTP Server, only one of the **python3-mod_wsgi**, **python38-mod_wsgi**, or **python39-mod_wsgi** packages can be installed on a system.

Procedure

- To install Python 3.6 from the **python36** module, use:

```
# yum install python3
```

The **python36:3.6** module stream is enabled automatically.

- To install Python 3.8 from the **python38** module, use:

```
# yum install python38
```

The **python38:3.8** module stream is enabled automatically.

- To install Python 3.9 from the **python39** module, use:

```
# yum install python39
```

The **python39:3.9** module stream is enabled automatically.

Verification steps

- To verify the Python version installed on your system, use the **--version** option with the **python** command specific for your required version of Python.
 - For Python 3.6:

```
$ python3 --version
```

- For Python 3.8:

```
$ python3.8 --version
```

- For Python 3.9:

```
$ python3.9 --version
```

Additional resources

- [Installing, managing, and removing user-space components](#)

38.2. INSTALLING ADDITIONAL PYTHON 3 PACKAGES

Packages with add-on modules for Python 3.6 generally use the **python3-** prefix, packages for Python 3.8 include the **python38-** prefix, and packages for Python 3.9 include the **python39-** prefix. Always include the prefix when installing additional Python packages, as shown in the examples below.

Procedure

- To install the **Requests** module for Python 3.6, use:

```
# yum install python3-requests
```

- To install the **Cython** extension to Python 3.8, use:

```
# yum install python38-Cython
```

- To install the **pip** package installer from Python 3.9, use:

```
# yum install python39-pip
```

38.3. INSTALLING ADDITIONAL PYTHON 3 TOOLS FOR DEVELOPERS

Additional Python tools for developers are distributed through the CodeReady Linux Builder repository in the respective **python3x-devel** module.

The **python38-devel** module contains the **python38-pytest** package and its dependencies: the **pyparsing**, **atomicwrites**, **attrs**, **packaging**, **py**, **more-itertools**, **pluggy**, and **wcwidth** packages.

The **python39-devel** module contains the **python39-pytest** package and its dependencies: the **pyparsing**, **attrs**, **packaging**, **py**, **more-itertools**, **pluggy**, **wcwidth**, **iniconfig**, and **pybind11** packages. The **python39-devel** module also contains the **python39-debug** and **python39-Cython** packages.



IMPORTANT

The CodeReady Linux Builder repository and its content is unsupported by Red Hat.

To install packages from the **python39-devel** module, use the following the procedure.

Procedure

1. Enable the CodeReady Linux Builder repository:

```
# subscription-manager repos --enable codeready-builder-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms
```

2. Enable the **python39-devel** module:

```
# yum module enable python39-devel
```

3. Install the **python39-pytest** package:

```
# yum install python39-pytest
```

To install packages from the **python38-devel** module, replace *python39-* with *python38-* in the commands above.

Additional resources

- [How to enable and make use of content within CodeReady Linux Builder](#)

38.4. INSTALLING PYTHON 2

Some applications and scripts have not yet been fully ported to Python 3 and require Python 2 to run. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 allows parallel installation of Python 3 and Python 2. If you need the Python 2 functionality, install the **python27** module, which is available in the AppStream repository.



WARNING

Note that Python 3 is the main development direction of the Python project. Support for Python 2 is being phased out. The **python27** module has a shorter support period than Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.

Procedure

- To install Python 2.7 from the **python27** module, use:

```
# yum install python2
```

The **python27:2.7** module stream is enabled automatically.

Packages with add-on modules for Python 2 generally use the **python2-** prefix. Always include the prefix when installing additional Python packages, as shown in the examples below.

- To install the **Requests** module for Python 2, use:

```
# yum install python2-requests
```

- To install the **Cython** extension to Python 2, use:

```
# yum install python2-Cython
```

Verification steps

- To verify the Python version installed on your system, use:

```
$ python2 --version
```



NOTE

By design, you can install RHEL 8 modules in parallel, including the **python27**, **python36**, **python38**, and **python39** modules.

Additional resources

- [Installing, managing, and removing user-space components in RHEL 8](#)

38.5. MIGRATING FROM PYTHON 2 TO PYTHON 3

As a developer, you may want to migrate your former code that is written in Python 2 to Python 3.

For more information on how to migrate large code bases to Python 3, see [The Conservative Python 3 Porting Guide](#).

Note that after this migration, the original Python 2 code becomes interpretable by the Python 3 interpreter and stays interpretable for the Python 2 interpreter as well.

38.6. USING PYTHON

When running the Python interpreter or Python-related commands, always specify the version.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the required version of Python is installed.

Procedure

- To run the Python 3.6 interpreter or related commands, use, for example:

```
$ python3
$ python3 -m cython --help
$ pip3 install package
```

- To run the Python 3.8 interpreter or related commands, use, for example:

```
$ python3.8
$ python3.8 -m cython --help
$ pip3.8 install package
```

- To run the Python 3.9 interpreter or related commands, use, for example:

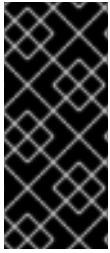
```
$ python3.9  
$ python3.9 -m pip --help  
$ pip3.9 install package
```

- To run the Python 2 interpreter or related commands, use, for example:

```
$ python2  
$ python2 -m cython --help  
$ pip2 install package
```

CHAPTER 39. CONFIGURING THE UNVERSIONED PYTHON

System administrators can configure the unversioned **python** command, located at `/usr/bin/python`, using the **alternatives** command. Note that the required package, **python3**, **python38**, **python39**, or **python2**, must be installed before configuring the unversioned command to the respective version.



IMPORTANT

The `/usr/bin/python` executable is controlled by the **alternatives** system. Any manual changes may be overwritten upon an update.

Additional Python-related commands, such as **pip3**, do not have configurable unversioned variants.

39.1. CONFIGURING THE UNVERSIONED PYTHON COMMAND DIRECTLY

You can configure the unversioned **python** command directly to a selected version of Python.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the required version of Python is installed.

Procedure

- To configure the unversioned **python** command to Python 3.6, use:

```
# alternatives --set python /usr/bin/python3
```

- To configure the unversioned **python** command to Python 3.8, use:

```
# alternatives --set python /usr/bin/python3.8
```

- To configure the unversioned **python** command to Python 3.9, use:

```
# alternatives --set python /usr/bin/python3.9
```

- To configure the unversioned **python** command to Python 2, use:

```
# alternatives --set python /usr/bin/python2
```

39.2. CONFIGURING THE UNVERSIONED PYTHON COMMAND TO THE REQUIRED PYTHON VERSION INTERACTIVELY

You can configure the unversioned **python** command to the required Python version interactively.

Prerequisites

- Ensure that the required version of Python is installed.

Procedure

1. To configure the unversioned **python** command interactively, use:

```
# alternatives --config python
```

2. Select the required version from the provided list.
3. To reset this configuration and remove the unversioned **python** command, use:

```
# alternatives --auto python
```

39.3. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **alternatives(8)** and **unversioned-python(1)** man pages

CHAPTER 40. PACKAGING PYTHON 3 RPMS

Most Python projects use Setuptools for packaging, and define package information in the **setup.py** file. For more information about Setuptools packaging, see the [Setuptools documentation](#).

You can also package your Python project into an RPM package, which provides the following advantages compared to Setuptools packaging:

- Specification of dependencies of a package on other RPMs (even non-Python)
- Cryptographic signing
With cryptographic signing, content of RPM packages can be verified, integrated, and tested with the rest of the operating system.

40.1. SPEC FILE DESCRIPTION FOR A PYTHON PACKAGE

A SPEC file contains instructions that the **rpmbuild** utility uses to build an RPM. The instructions are included in a series of sections. A SPEC file has two main parts in which the sections are defined:

- Preamble (contains a series of metadata items that are used in the Body)
- Body (contains the main part of the instructions)

An RPM SPEC file for Python projects has some specifics compared to non-Python RPM SPEC files. Most notably, a name of any RPM package of a Python library must always include the prefix determining the version, for example, **python3** for Python 3.6, **python38** for Python 3.8, or **python39** for Python 3.9.

Other specifics are shown in the following SPEC file **example for the python3-detox package**. For description of such specifics, see the notes below the example.

```
%global modname detox 1

Name:      python3-detox 2
Version:   0.12
Release:   4%{?dist}
Summary:   Distributing activities of the tox tool
License:   MIT
URL:       https://pypi.io/project/detox
Source0:   https://pypi.io/packages/source/d/%{modname}/%{modname}-%{version}.tar.gz

BuildArch: noarch

BuildRequires: python36-devel 3
BuildRequires: python3-setuptools
BuildRequires: python36-rpm-macros
BuildRequires: python3-six
BuildRequires: python3-tox
BuildRequires: python3-py
BuildRequires: python3-eventlet

%?python_enable_dependency_generator 4

%description
```

Detox is the distributed version of the tox python testing tool. It makes efficient use of multiple CPUs by running all possible activities in parallel.

Detox has the same options and configuration that tox has, so after installation you can run it in the same way and with the same options that you use for tox.

```
$ detox

%prep
%autosetup -n %{modname}-%{version}

%build
%py3_build

%install
%py3_install

%check
%{__python3} setup.py test

%files -n python3-%{modname}
%doc CHANGELOG
%license LICENSE
%{_bindir}/detox
%{python3_sitelib}/%{modname}/
%{python3_sitelib}/%{modname}-%{version}*

%changelog
...
```

5

6

- 1 The **modname** macro contains the name of the Python project. In this example it is **detox**.
- 2 When packaging a Python project into RPM, the **python3** prefix always needs to be added to the original name of the project. The original name here is **detox** and the **name of the RPM** is **python3-detox**.
- 3 **BuildRequires** specifies what packages are required to build and test this package. In **BuildRequires**, always include items providing tools necessary for building Python packages: **python36-devel** and **python3-setuptools**. The **python36-rpm-macros** package is required so that files with **/usr/bin/python3** interpreter directives are automatically changed to **/usr/bin/python3.6**.
- 4 Every Python package requires some other packages to work correctly. Such packages need to be specified in the SPEC file as well. To specify the **dependencies**, you can use the **%python_enable_dependency_generator** macro to automatically use dependencies defined in the **setup.py** file. If a package has dependencies that are not specified using **Setuptools**, specify them within additional **Requires** directives.
- 5 The **%py3_build** and **%py3_install** macros run the **setup.py build** and **setup.py install** commands, respectively, with additional arguments to specify installation locations, the interpreter to use, and other details.
- 6 The **check** section provides a macro that runs the correct version of Python. The **%{__python3}** macro contains a path for the Python 3 interpreter, for example **/usr/bin/python3**. We recommend to always use the macro rather than a literal path.

40.2. COMMON MACROS FOR PYTHON 3 RPMS

In a SPEC file, always use the macros that are described in the following Macros for Python 3 RPMS table rather than hardcoding their values.

In macro names, always use **python3** or **python2** instead of unversioned **python**. Configure the particular Python 3 version in the **BuildRequires** of the SPEC file to **python36-rpm-macros**, **python38-rpm-macros**, or **python39-rpm-macros**.

Table 40.1. Macros for Python 3 RPMS

Macro	Normal Definition	Description
<code>%{__python3}</code>	<code>/usr/bin/python3</code>	Python 3 interpreter
<code>%{python3_version}</code>	3.6	The full version of the Python 3 interpreter.
<code>%{python3_sitelib}</code>	<code>/usr/lib/python3.6/site-packages</code>	Where pure-Python modules are installed.
<code>%{python3_sitelib64}</code>	<code>/usr/lib64/python3.6/site-packages</code>	Where modules containing architecture-specific extensions are installed.
<code>%py3_build</code>		Runs the setup.py build command with arguments suitable for a system package.
<code>%py3_install</code>		Runs the setup.py install command with arguments suitable for a system package.

40.3. AUTOMATIC PROVIDES FOR PYTHON RPMS

When packaging a Python project, make sure that the following directories are included in the resulting RPM if these directories are present:

- **.dist-info**
- **.egg-info**
- **.egg-link**

From these directories, the RPM build process automatically generates virtual **pythonX.Ydist** provides, for example, **python3.6dist(detox)**. These virtual provides are used by packages that are specified by the `%python_enable_dependency_generator` macro.

CHAPTER 41. HANDLING INTERPRETER DIRECTIVES IN PYTHON SCRIPTS

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, executable Python scripts are expected to use interpreter directives (also known as hashbangs or shebangs) that explicitly specify at a minimum the major Python version. For example:

```
#!/usr/bin/python3
#!/usr/bin/python3.6
#!/usr/bin/python2
```

The **/usr/lib/rpm/redhat/brp-mangle-shebangs** buildroot policy (BRP) script is run automatically when building any RPM package, and attempts to correct interpreter directives in all executable files.

The BRP script generates errors when encountering a Python script with an ambiguous interpreter directive, such as:

```
#!/usr/bin/python
```

or

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
```

41.1. MODIFYING INTERPRETER DIRECTIVES IN PYTHON SCRIPTS

Modify interpreter directives in the Python scripts that cause the build errors at RPM build time.

Prerequisites

- Some of the interpreter directives in your Python scripts cause a build error.

Procedure

To modify interpreter directives, complete one of the following tasks:

- Apply the **pathfix.py** script from the **platform-python-devel** package:

```
# pathfix.py -pn -i %{__python3} PATH ...
```

Note that multiple **PATHs** can be specified. If a **PATH** is a directory, **pathfix.py** recursively scans for any Python scripts matching the pattern **^[a-zA-Z0-9_]+\.py\$**, not only those with an ambiguous interpreter directive. Add this command to the **%prep** section or at the end of the **%install** section.

- Modify the packaged Python scripts so that they conform to the expected format. For this purpose, **pathfix.py** can be used outside the RPM build process, too. When running **pathfix.py** outside an RPM build, replace **%{__python3}** from the example above with a path for the interpreter directive, such as **/usr/bin/python3**.

If the packaged Python scripts require a version other than Python 3.6, adjust the preceding commands to include the required version.

41.2. CHANGING /USR/BIN/PYTHON3 INTERPRETER DIRECTIVES IN YOUR CUSTOM PACKAGES

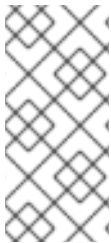
By default, interpreter directives in the form of **/usr/bin/python3** are replaced with interpreter directives pointing to Python from the **platform-python** package, which is used for system tools with Red Hat Enterprise Linux. You can change the **/usr/bin/python3** interpreter directives in your custom packages to point to a specific version of Python that you have installed from the AppStream repository.

Procedure

- To build your package for a specific version of Python, add the **python*-rpm-macros** subpackage of the respective **python** package to the **BuildRequires** section of the SPEC file. For example, for Python 3.6, include the following line:

```
BuildRequires: python36-rpm-macros
```

As a result, the **/usr/bin/python3** interpreter directives in your custom package are automatically converted to **/usr/bin/python3.6**.



NOTE

To prevent the BRP script from checking and modifying interpreter directives, use the following RPM directive:

```
%undefine __brp_mangle_shebangs
```

CHAPTER 42. USING THE PHP SCRIPTING LANGUAGE

Hypertext Preprocessor (PHP) is a general-purpose scripting language mainly used for server-side scripting, which enables you to run the PHP code using a web server.

In RHEL 8, the PHP scripting language is provided by the **php** module, which is available in multiple streams (versions).

Depending on your use case, you can install a specific profile of the selected module stream:

- **common** - The default profile for server-side scripting using a web server. It includes several widely used extensions.
- **minimal** - This profile installs only the command-line interface for scripting with PHP without using a web server.
- **devel** - This profile includes packages from the **common** profile and additional packages for development purposes.

42.1. INSTALLING THE PHP SCRIPTING LANGUAGE

This section describes how to install a selected version of the **php** module.

Procedure

- To install a **php** module stream with the default profile, use:

```
# yum module install php:stream
```

Replace *stream* with the version of PHP you wish to install.

For example, to install PHP 8.0:

```
# yum module install php:8.0
```

The default **common** profile installs also the **php-fpm** package, and preconfigures PHP for use with the **Apache HTTP Server** or **nginx**.

- To install a specific profile of a **php** module stream, use:

```
# yum module install php:stream/profile
```

Replace *stream* with the desired version and *profile* with the name of the profile you wish to install.

For example, to install PHP 8.0 for use without a web server:

```
# yum module install php:8.0/minimal
```

Additional resources

- If you want to upgrade from an earlier version of PHP available in RHEL 8, see [Switching to a later stream](#).

- For more information on managing RHEL 8 modules and streams, see [Installing, managing, and removing user-space components](#).

42.2. USING THE PHP SCRIPTING LANGUAGE WITH A WEB SERVER

42.2.1. Using PHP with the Apache HTTP Server

In Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, the **Apache HTTP Server** enables you to run PHP as a FastCGI process server. FastCGI Process Manager (FPM) is an alternative PHP FastCGI daemon that allows a website to manage high loads. PHP uses FastCGI Process Manager by default in RHEL 8.

This section describes how to run the PHP code using the FastCGI process server.

Prerequisites

- The PHP scripting language is installed on your system.
See [Installing the PHP scripting language](#).

Procedure

1. Install the **httpd** module:

```
# yum module install httpd:2.4
```

2. Start the **Apache HTTP Server**:

```
# systemctl start httpd
```

Or, if the **Apache HTTP Server** is already running on your system, restart the **httpd** service after installing PHP:

```
# systemctl restart httpd
```

3. Start the **php-fpm** service:

```
# systemctl start php-fpm
```

4. Optional: Enable both services to start at boot time:

```
# systemctl enable php-fpm httpd
```

5. To obtain information about your PHP settings, create the **index.php** file with the following content in the **/var/www/html/** directory:

```
echo '<?php phpinfo(); ?>' > /var/www/html/index.php
```

6. To run the **index.php** file, point the browser to:

```
http://<hostname>/
```

7. Optional: Adjust configuration if you have specific requirements:

- `/etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf` – generic **httpd** configuration
- `/etc/httpd/conf.d/php.conf` – PHP-specific configuration for **httpd**
- `/usr/lib/systemd/system/httpd.service.d/php-fpm.conf` – by default, the **php-fpm** service is started with **httpd**
- `/etc/php-fpm.conf` – FPM main configuration
- `/etc/php-fpm.d/www.conf` – default **www** pool configuration

Example 42.1. Running a "Hello, World!" PHP script using the Apache HTTP Server

1. Create a **hello** directory for your project in the `/var/www/html/` directory:

```
# mkdir hello
```

2. Create a **hello.php** file in the `/var/www/html/hello/` directory with the following content:

```
# <!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
<title>Hello, World! Page</title>
</head>
<body>
<?php
    echo 'Hello, World!';
?>
</body>
</html>
```

3. Start the **Apache HTTP Server**:

```
# systemctl start httpd
```

4. To run the **hello.php** file, point the browser to:

```
http://<hostname>/hello/hello.php
```

As a result, a web page with the "Hello, World!" text is displayed.

Additional resources

- [Setting up the Apache HTTP web server](#)

42.2.2. Using PHP with the nginx web server

This section describes how to run PHP code through the **nginx** web server.

Prerequisites

- The PHP scripting language is installed on your system.
See [Installing the PHP scripting language](#).

Procedure

1. Install an **nginx** module stream:

```
# yum module install nginx:stream
```

Replace *stream* with the version of **nginx** you wish to install.

For example, to install **nginx** version 1.18:

```
# yum module install nginx:1.18
```

2. Start the **nginx** server:

```
# systemctl start nginx
```

Or, if the **nginx** server is already running on your system, restart the **nginx** service after installing PHP:

```
# systemctl restart nginx
```

3. Start the **php-fpm** service:

```
# systemctl start php-fpm
```

4. Optional: Enable both services to start at boot time:

```
# systemctl enable php-fpm nginx
```

5. To obtain information about your PHP settings, create the **index.php** file with the following content in the **/usr/share/nginx/html/** directory:

```
echo '<?php phpinfo(); ?>' > /usr/share/nginx/html/index.php
```

6. To run the **index.php** file, point the browser to:

```
http://<hostname>/
```

7. Optional: Adjust configuration if you have specific requirements:

- **/etc/nginx/nginx.conf** - **nginx** main configuration
- **/etc/nginx/conf.d/php-fpm.conf** - FPM configuration for **nginx**
- **/etc/php-fpm.conf** - FPM main configuration
- **/etc/php-fpm.d/www.conf** - default **www** pool configuration

Example 42.2. Running a "Hello, World!" PHP script using the nginx server

1. Create a **hello** directory for your project in the **/usr/share/nginx/html/** directory:

```
# mkdir hello
```

2. Create a **hello.php** file in the `/usr/share/nginx/html/hello/` directory with the following content:

```
# <!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
<title>Hello, World! Page</title>
</head>
<body>
<?php
    echo 'Hello, World!';
?>
</body>
</html>
```

3. Start the **nginx** server:

```
# systemctl start nginx
```

4. To run the **hello.php** file, point the browser to:

```
http://<hostname>/hello/hello.php
```

As a result, a web page with the “Hello, World!” text is displayed.

Additional resources

- [Setting up and configuring NGINX](#)

42.3. RUNNING A PHP SCRIPT USING THE COMMAND-LINE INTERFACE

A PHP script is usually run using a web server, but also can be run using the command-line interface.

If you want to run **php** scripts using only command-line, install the **minimal** profile of a **php** module stream.

See [Installing the PHP scripting language](#).

Prerequisites

- The PHP scripting language is installed on your system.
See [Installing the PHP scripting language](#).

Procedure

1. In a text editor, create a **filename.php** file
Replace *filename* with the name of your file.
2. Execute the created **filename.php** file from the command line:

```
# php filename.php
```

Example 42.3. Running a "Hello, World!" PHP script using the command-line interface

1. Create a **hello.php** file with the following content using a text editor:

```
<?php
    echo 'Hello, World!';
?>
```

2. Execute the **hello.php** file from the command line:

```
# php hello.php
```

As a result, "Hello, World!" is printed.

42.4. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- **httpd(8)** – The manual page for the **httpd** service containing the complete list of its command-line options.
- **httpd.conf(5)** – The manual page for **httpd** configuration, describing the structure and location of the **httpd** configuration files.
- **nginx(8)** – The manual page for the **nginx** web server containing the complete list of its command-line options and list of signals.
- **php-fpm(8)** – The manual page for PHP FPM describing the complete list of its command-line options and configuration files.

CHAPTER 43. USING LANGPACKS

Langpacks are meta-packages which install extra add-on packages containing translations, dictionaries and locales for every package installed on the system.

On a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8 system, **langpacks** installation is based on the **langpacks-<langcode>** language meta-packages and RPM weak dependencies (Supplements tag).

There are two prerequisites to be able to use **langpacks** for a selected language. If these prerequisites are fulfilled, the language meta-packages pull their langpack for the selected language automatically in the transaction set.

Prerequisites

- The **langpacks-<langcode>** language meta-package for the selected language has been installed on the system.

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, the langpacks meta packages are installed automatically with the initial installation of the operating system using the Anaconda installer, because these packages are available in the in Application Stream repository.

For more information, see [Checking languages that provide langpacks](#).

- The base package, for which you want to search the locale packages, has already been installed on the system.

43.1. CHECKING LANGUAGES THAT PROVIDE LANGPACKS

Follow this procedure to check which languages provide langpacks.

Procedure

- Execute the following command:

```
# yum list langpacks-*
```

43.2. WORKING WITH RPM WEAK DEPENDENCY-BASED LANGPACKS

This section describes multiple actions that you may want to perform when querying RPM weak dependency-based langpacks, installing or removing language support.

43.2.1. Listing already installed language support

To list the already installed language support, use this procedure.

Procedure

- Execute the following command:

```
# yum list installed langpacks*
```

43.2.2. Checking the availability of language support

To check if language support is available for any language, use the following procedure.

Procedure

- Execute the following command:

```
# yum list available langpacks*
```

43.2.3. Listing packages installed for a language

To list what packages get installed for any language, use the following procedure:

Procedure

- Execute the following command:

```
# yum repoquery --whatsupplements langpacks-<locale_code>
```

43.2.4. Installing language support

To add new a language support, use the following procedure.

Procedure

- Execute the following command:

```
# yum install langpacks-<locale_code>
```

43.2.5. Removing language support

To remove any installed language support, use the following procedure.

Procedure

- Execute the following command:

```
# yum remove langpacks-<locale_code>
```

43.3. SAVING DISK SPACE BY USING GLIBC-LANGPACK-<LOCALE_CODE>

Currently, all locales are stored in the **/usr/lib/locale/locale-archive** file, which requires a lot of disk space.

On systems where disk space is a critical issue, such as containers and cloud images, or only a few locales are needed, you can use the glibc locale langpack packages (**glibc-langpack-<locale_code>**).

To install locales individually, and thus gain a smaller package installation footprint, use the following procedure.

Procedure

- Execute the following command:

```
# yum install glibc-langpack-<locale_code>
```

When installing the operating system with Anaconda, **glibc-langpack-<locale_code>** is installed for the language you used during the installation and also for the languages you selected as additional languages. Note that **glibc-all-langpacks**, which contains all locales, is installed by default, so some locales are duplicated. If you installed **glibc-langpack-<locale_code>** for one or more selected languages, you can delete **glibc-all-langpacks** after the installation to save the disk space.

Note that installing only selected **glibc-langpack-<locale_code>** packages instead of **glibc-all-langpacks** has impact on run time performance.



NOTE

If disk space is not an issue, keep all locales installed by using the **glibc-all-langpacks** package.

CHAPTER 44. GETTING STARTED WITH TCL/TK

44.1. INTRODUCTION TO TCL/TK

Tool command language (Tcl) is a dynamic programming language. The interpreter for this language, together with the C library, is provided by the **tcl** package.

Using **Tcl** paired with **Tk (Tcl/Tk)** enables creating cross-platform GUI applications. **Tk** is provided by the **tk** package.

Note that **Tk** can refer to any of the following:

- A programming toolkit for multiple languages
- A Tk C library bindings available for multiple languages, such as C, Ruby, Perl and Python
- A wish interpreter that instantiates a Tk console
- A Tk extension that adds a number of new commands to a particular Tcl interpreter

For more information about Tcl/Tk, see the [Tcl/Tk manual](#) or [Tcl/Tk documentation web page](#).

44.2. NOTABLE CHANGES IN TCL/TK 8.6

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 used **Tcl/Tk 8.5**. With Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, **Tcl/Tk version 8.6** is provided in the Base OS repository.

Major changes in **Tcl/Tk 8.6** compared to **Tcl/Tk 8.5** are:

- Object-oriented programming support
- Stackless evaluation implementation
- Enhanced exceptions handling
- Collection of third-party packages built and installed with Tcl
- Multi-thread operations enabled
- SQL database-powered scripts support
- IPv6 networking support
- Built-in Zlib compression
- List processing
Two new commands, **lmap** and **dict map** are available, which allow the expression of transformations over **Tcl** containers.
- Stacked channels by script
Two new commands, **chan push** and **chan pop** are available, which allow to add or remove transformations to or from I/O channels.

Major changes in **Tk** include:

- Built-in PNG image support

- Busy windows
A new command, **tk busy** is available, which disables user interaction for a window or a widget and shows the busy cursor.
- New font selection dialog interface
- Angled text support
- Moving things on a canvas support

For the detailed list of changes between **Tcl 8.5** and **Tcl 8.6**, see [Changes in Tcl/Tk 8.6](#).

44.3. MIGRATING TO TCL/TK 8.6

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 used **Tcl/Tk 8.5**. With Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8, **Tcl/Tk version 8.6** is provided in the Base OS repository.

This section describes migration path to **Tcl/Tk 8.6** for:

- Developers writing **Tcl** extensions or embedding **Tcl** interpreter into their applications
- Users scripting tasks with **Tcl/Tk**

44.3.1. Migration path for developers of Tcl extensions

To make your code compatible with **Tcl 8.6**, use the following procedure.

Procedure

1. Rewrite the code to use the **interp** structure. For example, if your code reads **interp** → **errorLine**, rewrite it to use the following function:

```
Tcl_GetErrorLine(interp)
```

This is necessary because **Tcl 8.6** limits direct access to members of the **interp** structure.

2. To make your code compatible with both **Tcl 8.5** and **Tcl 8.6**, use the following code snippet in a header file of your C or C++ application or extension that includes the **Tcl** library:

```
# include <tcl.h>
# if !defined(Tcl_GetErrorLine)
# define Tcl_GetErrorLine(interp) (interp->errorLine)
# endif
```

44.3.2. Migration path for users scripting their tasks with Tcl/Tk

In **Tcl 8.6**, most scripts work the same way as with the previous version of **Tcl**.

To migrate you code into **Tcl 8.6**, use this procedure.

Procedure

- When writing a portable code, make sure to not use the commands that are no longer supported in **Tk 8.6**:

```
tklconList_Arrange
tklconList_AutoScan
tklconList_Btn1
tklconList_Config
tklconList_Create
tklconList_CtrlBtn1
tklconList_Curselection
tklconList_DeleteAll
tklconList_Double1
tklconList_DrawSelection
tklconList_FocusIn
tklconList_FocusOut
tklconList_Get
tklconList_Goto
tklconList_Index
tklconList_Invoke
tklconList_KeyPress
tklconList_Leave1
tklconList_LeftRight
tklconList_Motion1
tklconList_Reset
tklconList_ReturnKey
tklconList_See
tklconList_Select
tklconList_Selection
tklconList_ShiftBtn1
tklconList_UpDown
```

Note that you can check the list of unsupported commands also in the **/usr/share/tk8.6/unsupported.tcl** file.